SPONSORING ORGANIZATIONS

American Cancer Society
National Cancer Institute
College of American Pathologists
American College of Physicians
American College of Radiology
American College of Surgeons

American Joint Committee
55 East Erie Street
Chicago, Illinois 60611

First Printing 1977

This manual was prepared and published through the support of American Cancer Society grant CCG #99Q and Grant Number CA11606-08, awarded by the National Cancer Institute, DHEW.
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**Introduction**

**PART I. GENERAL INFORMATION ON CANCER STAGING AND END-RESULTS REPORTING**

| Chapter 1: | Philosophy of Classifications and Staging by the TNM System | 1 |
|           | Nomenclature in Morphology of Cancer | 2 |
|           | General Rules and the Relationship Between Time and the Staging of Cancer | 3 |
|           | Definitions of Symbols | 4 |
|           | General Oncology Data Forms | 6 |

| Chapter 2: | Reporting of Cancer Survival and End Results | 15 |

**PART II. STAGING OF CANCER AT SPECIFIC ANATOMIC SITES**

| Chapter 3: | Staging of Cancer at Head and Neck Sites: Oral Cavity. Pharynx. Larynx. and Paranasal Sinuses | 27 |
| Chapter 4: | Staging of Cancer of the Salivary Glands | 49 |
| Chapter 5: | Staging of Cancer of the Thyroid | 53 |
| Chapter 6: | Staging of Cancer of the Lung | 59 |
| Chapter 7: | Staging of Cancer of the Esophagus | 65 |
| Chapter 8: | Staging of Cancer of the Stomach | 71 |
| Chapter 9: | Staging of Cancer of the Colon and Rectum | 77 |
| Chapter 10: | Staging of Cancer of the Pancreas | 85 |
| Chapter 12: | Staging of Cancer of the Breast | 101 |
| Chapter 14: | Staging of Malignant Melanoma | 131 |
| Chapter 15: | Staging of Hodgkin's Disease and Non-Hodgkin's Lymphomas | 137 |
| Chapter 16: | Staging of Primary Malignant Bone Tumors | 143 |
| Chapter 17: | Staging of Soft Tissue Sarcoma | 153 |
| Chapter 18: | Staging of Cancer in Pediatric Patients | 159 |
| Chapter 19: | Staging of Cancer of the Brain | 167 |
| Chapter 20: | Staging of Cancer of the Skin | 173 |

**Part III. PERSONNEL AMERICAN JOINT COMMITTEE FOR CANCER STAGING AND END-RESULTS REPORTING**
INTRODUCTION

This manual brings together all currently available information on the state of the art of staging cancer at various anatomic sites as developed by the American Joint Committee. Although not all of the schemes included here are uniform in design, and some are more firmly established than others, the manual will permit some consistency in describing the extent of the neoplastic diseases of different anatomic systems or organs.

Proper classification and staging of cancer will allow the physician to determine treatment for the patient more appropriately, to evaluate results of management more reliably, and to compare statistics reported from various institutions more confidently.

Staging of cancer is not an exact science. As new information becomes available about etiology and various methods of diagnosis and treatment, the classification and staging of cancer will change. Periodically, this manual will be revised so that it reflects the changing state of the art. However, changes will occur only at reasonable periods.

It is hoped that the programs included in this manual may be used as published — or at least, modified only minimally — so that consistency in data gathering will be possible.

The American Joint Committee for Cancer Staging and End-Results Reporting was organized on January 9, 1959, for the purpose of developing a system of clinical staging of cancer by site acceptable to the American medical profession. The sponsoring organizations are: The American College of Surgeons, the American College of Radiology, the College of American Pathologists, the American College of Physicians, the American Cancer Society, and the National Cancer Institute. Each of the sponsoring organizations designates members of the Committee. The American College of Surgeons serves as administrative sponsor. Subcommittees, designated as "task forces," have been appointed to consider malignant neoplasms of selected anatomic sites for the purpose of developing classifications. Each task force is composed of committee members and other professional appointees whose special interests and skills are appropriate to the site under consideration.

The American Joint Committee attempts to develop classifications that are compatible, as far as possible, with those published by the International Union Against Cancer (Union Internationale Contre le Cancer, UICC)* and that are within the current standards of practice in American medicine. In developing its classifications, the American Joint Committee has employed the principle of the TNM system as described by the UICC where appropriate, but not in all instances if other staging recommendations are already accepted and widely used.

The TNM Committee and the AJC Committee have attempted to come to agreement on cancer at many anatomic sites. Where variance is present it is indicated by a footnote, publication of both recommendations, or otherwise indicated under each chapter.

Members of the AJC, its task forces, and committees, as well as the sponsoring organizations, owe a debt of gratitude to the many physicians and other persons who have contributed, voluntarily, so greatly to this effort in the hope that more patients with cancer will survive in the future and that the quality of life of the cancer patient can be as near normal as possible. The contributions of the TNM Committee of the UICC and other international organizations with the same purposes are gratefully acknowledged.

Staging recommendations are included for cancers at most anatomic sites. However, there are several regions or organs not as yet considered, such as the liver, adrenal, eye, gallbladder, bile ducts, small intestine, urethra, and penis. Several of the recommendations are preliminary, either based on earlier studies by the AJC, current studies now underway but not yet completed, or expert opinion by specialists in the field. These include cancer of the thyroid, salivary glands, and pancreas. Last, it is recognized that data are not available in certain instances to arrive at preliminary recommendations so none are given, but reference to other studies and protocols for prospective studies are mentioned.

Under any circumstance a cancer at any anatomic site can be recorded as localized, regional, or distant depending on the findings until a more refined classification and staging are developed.

Publications Committee
Oliver H. Beahrs, Chairman
David T. Carr
Philip Rubin
PART I. GENERAL INFORMATION ON CANCER STAGING AND END-RESULTS REPORTING
PHILOSOPHY OF CLASSIFICATIONS AND STAGING BY THE TNM SYSTEM

The classification of cancer encompasses all possible degrees of progression in the usual events that make up the life history of a cancer — the extent of disease or other features or both — in accordance with an agreed upon plan. In general, it can be applied meaningfully only to cancers that are alike as to site or histologic type or both. The basis for using extent of disease is that survival time and apparent recovery rates are greater in most cases that have lesser extension.

The American Joint Committee classification is based logically on a simple concept of the life history or progression of a cancer. From beginning to end (death or cure) there is a finite time, and at certain points of this time line significant events occur (or become manifest). The size of the primary tumor increases throughout this period so that the size of the tumor (T) is a significant feature.

Although the early part of the life of a cancer is silent, at some time it becomes manifest by signs or symptoms, and the time at which it is diagnosable, or at which the diagnosis is actually made, is a significant point of time and is used as a standard time for the first (clinical-diagnostic) stage classification.

As the primary tumor increases in size throughout its time span, at some point (probably early) local invasion occurs, followed by spread to the regional lymph nodes draining the area of the tumor. The period when this spread is manifest or discernible by available methods of clinical examination is thus another significant marker in the progression of the cancer (N). It is usually later and often in the middle or older period of life span of the cancer! that distant spread or metastasis (M) becomes evident from clinical examination. Thus metastasis (M) is the third and usually latest time marker.

These three significant events in the life history of a cancer, tumor growth (T), spread to primary lymph nodes (N), and metastasis (M), are used as they appear (or do not appear) on clinical examination before definitive therapy begins to indicate the degree of extension of the cancer. This shorthand method of indicating the extent of disease at a particular designated time is the stage of the cancer in its evolution. However! it may be used, sometimes with other features added, in a scheme of stage classification. When retrospective or prospective studies of cases show that certain groupings of TNM or other features can be made that have valid significance for staging? a stage classification may be devised.

Events such as local spread including spread to primary lymph nodes, and metastasis sometimes occur before they are discernible by clinical examination. Thus, examination at the time of a surgical procedure and histologic examination of the surgically removed tissues may identify the significant markers of the life history of the cancer (T, N, and M) as being different from what could be discerned clinically before therapy. Although this may be the basis of a stage classification (surgical-evaluative or based on pathologic examination), it cannot be mixed with clinical staging for evaluative and reporting purposes. It may, nevertheless, be a more accurate depiction of the period in the life history of the cancer and be valuable for prognostic purposes.

Therapeutic procedures, even if not curative! may alter the course and life history of cancer. Although cancers that are recurrent after therapy may be staged using the same markers as in pretreatment clinical-diagnostic staging! their significance may not be the same. Hence the stage classification of recurrent cancer must be considered separately for therapeutic guidance, prognosis, and end-results reporting.

The significance of the marker points in their life history differs for tumors of different sites and of different histologic types. Hence the marker points, even if T, N, and M, must be defined for each type of tumor in order to be valid and have maximum significance. In certain types of tumors, such as Hodgkin's disease and lymphomas! a different system for designating the extent of the disease and for stage classification is necessary to accomplish the goal of usefulness. In these cases other symbols or descriptive markers may be used rather than T, N, and M.
Stage classification is thus a method of designating the state of a cancer at various points in time and is related to the natural course of this particular type of cancer. It is intended to provide a way by which this information can be readily communicated to others, to assist in decisions regarding treatment, and to be a factor in judgment as to prognosis. Ultimately, it provides a mechanism for comparing like or unlike groups of cases, particularly in regard to the results of different therapeutic procedures.

In addition to anatomic extent, the histopathologic analysis and grade of the tumor are important determinants in classification. The type of tumor and the grade are also most important variables affecting choices of treatment. For sarcomas, the tumor grade may prove to be the most important index.

**Nomenclature in Morphology of Cancer**

Cancer therapy decisions are made after an assessment of the patient and his tumor, using many methods that often include sophisticated technical procedures. For most types of cancer, the extent to which the disease has spread is probably the most important factor determining prognosis and must be given prime consideration in evaluating and comparing different therapeutic regimens.

Staging classifications are based on description of the extent of disease and their design requires a thorough knowledge of the natural history of each type of cancer. Such knowledge has been and continues to be derived primarily from morphologic studies, which also provide us with the definitions and classifications of tumor types.

An accurate histologic diagnosis, therefore, is an essential element in a meaningful evaluation of the tumor patient. In certain types of cancer, biochemical or immunologic measurements of normal or abnormal cellular function have become important elements in typing tumors precisely. Increasingly, definitions and classifications should include function as a component of the pathologist's anatomic diagnosis. One may also anticipate that special techniques in histochemistry, cytogenetics, and tissue culture will be used more routinely for typing and characterizing tumor behavior.

The most complete and best known compendium of tumor definitions and illustrations in English is the multiple volumes that constitute the Atlas of Tumor Pathology published by the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology. These are under constant revision and are used as a basic reference by pathologists throughout the world.

In 1956, the World Health Organization initiated a program designed to provide an internationally acceptable histologic classification of tumors. For each tumor site, a draft classification is prepared by a small group of international experts. A reference center and several collaborating laboratories are then designated by the World Health Organization. After intensive review of large amounts of histologic and clinical material, the proposed classification is revised and tested in the field. The product is the "blue book" publication, which includes the definition of the tumors in a given organ system, along with abundant illustrations. The terms used for each tumor type represent the preferred nomenclature and their arrangement may be considered a working classification. Fourteen books have now been published and the series will be complete in 1978 with publication of two more.

In the interest of promoting national and international collaboration in cancer research, and specifically to facilitate cooperation in clinical investigation, the AJC recommends that the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-0) be accepted and its use encouraged for coding neoplasms by topography and histology (morphology) and for indicating behavior (malignant, benign, in situ, uncertain, or metastatic). This coded nomenclature is based on the Manual of Tumor Nomenclature and Coding (MOTNAC) published by the American Cancer Society in 1968.

**REFERENCES**


3. Atlas of Tumor Pathology: Published by the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology.

GENERAL RULES AND THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TIME AND THE STAGING OF CANCER

To facilitate the use of the TNM system and to standardize its application in the classification of various cancers, the AJC has adopted the following general rules:

1. The TNM system provides a basis for categorizing the extent of disease and, when appropriate, will be used. When the TNM system is used, the letter T represents the primary tumor, with appropriate suffixes to describe increasing sizes of the tumor, or involvement by direct extension, or both. The letter N represents the regional lymph node involvement, with appropriate suffixes to describe the absence of involvement or increasing degrees of such involvement. The letter M represents distant metastasis, with appropriate suffixes to describe the absence of such metastasis or increasing degrees of such dissemination of the tumor. The various categories of T, N, and M may be grouped into appropriate combinations to create a small number of stages of the disease.

2. Different types of evaluative evidence are used for classifying the extent of disease at different sites and at different time periods. The terms are:
   - cTNM: clinical-diagnostic staging
   - sTNM: surgical-evaluative staging
   - pTNM: postsurgical treatment-pathologic staging
   - rTNM: retreatment staging (clinical-diagnostic stage — classification when restaging is necessary for additional or secondary treatment)
   - aTNM: autopsy staging

3. CLINICAL-DIAGNOSTIC STAGING
   For cancers at certain accessible sites, especially those that can be treated in an appropriate manner by more than one treatment modality, the extent of the cancer should be determined and recorded before definitive treatment is carried out. This provides a Clinical-Diagnostic Stage Classification and makes it possible to compare the results of different modalities of treatment of certain accessible lesions, such as carcinoma of the cervix, larynx, and oral cavity.

4. SURGICAL-EVALUATIVE STAGING
   The term surgical-evaluative stage classification is to be used to describe the known extent of disease after a major surgical exploration or biopsy, or both. For cancers at sites inaccessible to thorough clinical evaluation, such as carcinoma of the ovary, stomach, colon, kidney, and lung, information obtained by surgical exploration or histopathologic studies of biopsy specimens, or both, may be used, along with the available clinical data, in describing the extent of disease.

5. POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT-PATHOLOGIC STAGING
   The term postsurgical treatment-pathologic staging is to be used to describe the known extent of the disease following the complete examination of the therapeutically resected specimen. Residual tumor, if any, following surgical resection should be recorded (see rule 9).

6. For cancers of some sites it may be desirable to record a Clinical-Diagnostic Stage Classification, a Surgical-Evaluative Stage Classification, and/or a Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Stage Classification.

7. Varying amounts of information may be used in determining each stage classification for each primary site. Specific recommendations as to which information should be used for each type of staging will be given in the recommendations for each primary site.

8. Once the extent of disease has been established according to any stage classification, the stage classification should not be changed thereafter. The subsequent course of the neoplasm does not alter the original description or extent of tumor or stage classification.

9. At the time of surgical resection of a cancer all gross evidence of cancer may have been removed. On the other hand, gross residual cancer may have been left behind. This residual tumor must be identified under "R" to facilitate and aid in additional or further treatment of the patient. "R" does not enter into the staging of the tumor.
10. RETREATMENT STAGING
Cases in which treatment has failed and additional definitive treatment is being considered should be assigned an additional Retreatment Stage at the time of retreatment to describe the extent of disease at that time. Such cases should not be combined with a primary treatment series but should be grouped together and evaluated and reported separately. However, they must not be deleted from the original primary treatment series.

11. AUTOPSY STAGING
In case of death of the cancer patient, all information obtained at autopsy should be used for an autopsy stage and so designated as aTNM.

12. Histologic or cytologic verification of cancer is always necessary for classification and to establish the extent of tumor or stage.

13. The degree of anaplasia, whether well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, or undifferentiated, should be recorded as determined on histologic study under the letter “G.” If grading is well accepted at an anatomic site by numbers 1 through 4, then four groups may be used.

14. The performance index of the host, considering all cofactors, should be recorded at the time of each stage classification and at follow-up examinations. This should be done on the oncology record forms under the letter designation “H.”

In stage classification of cancer at various anatomic sites, an attempt has been made to simplify the staging as much as possible, consistent with accuracy. Also an attempt is made to have definitions of the various symbols as similar as can be from one site to another.

DEFINITIONS OF SYMBOLS

Three capital letters are used to describe extent of cancer:
- T PRIMARY TUMOR
- N REGIONAL LYMPH NODES
- M DISTANT METASTASIS

Type of classification
- c Clinical-diagnostic
- s Surgical-evaluative
- p Postsurgical treatment-pathologic
- r Retreatment
- a Autopsy

This classification is extended by the following designations:

TUMOR
- TX Tumor cannot be assessed
- T0 No evidence of primary tumor
- TIS Carcinoma in situ
- T1 T2 T3 T4 Progressive increase in tumor size and involvement

NODES
- NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed clinically
- N0 Regional lymph nodes not demonstrably abnormal
- N1 N2 N3 N4 Increasing degrees of demonstrable abnormality of regional lymph nodes

METASTASIS
- MX Not assessed
- M0 No (known) distant metastasis
- M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify sites of metastasis

HISTOPATHOLOGY

The cellular type of cancer.
Grade (G)
- G1 Well-differentiated
- G2 Moderately well-differentiated
- G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

Residual Tumor (R)

(This information does not enter into establishing stage of tumor but should be recorded on data form for use in considering additive therapy).

When the cancer is treated by definitive surgical procedures, residual cancer, if any, is recorded.
Residual tumor following surgical treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>No residual tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Microscopic residual tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>Macroscopic residual tumor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HOST PERFORMANCE SCALE AFTER TREATMENT**

The host performance status is determined at the time of clinical-diagnostic classification and recorded at subsequent times of classification as well as at each follow-up examination to measure that quality of life.

**HOST**

H is the physical state (performance scale) of the patient considering all cofactors determined at the time of stage classification and subsequent follow-up examinations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic and ambulatory — cares for self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ECOG/Zubrod scale and the Karnofsky scale are frequently used to record the physical state of the patients before treatment and at each subsequent examination.

**"Performance Status" (Karnofsky scale)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria of Performance Status (PS)</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Able to carry on normal activity: no special care is needed</td>
<td>100 Normal; no complaints; no evidence of disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to work; able to live at home and care for most personal needs; a varying amount of assistance is needed</td>
<td>90 Able to carry on normal activity; minor signs or symptoms of disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requires occasional assistance but is able to care for most of his needs</td>
<td>80 Normal activity with effort; some signs or symptoms of disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requires considerable assistance and frequent medical care</td>
<td>70 Cares for self; unable to carry on normal activity or to do active work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled; requires special care and assistance</td>
<td>60 Requires occasional assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severely disabled; hospitalization is indicated although death not imminent</td>
<td>50 Requires considerable assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moribund; fatal processes progressing rapidly</td>
<td>40 Disabled; requires special care and assistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very sick; hospitalization necessary; active supportive treatment is necessary</td>
<td>30 Severely disabled; hospitalization is indicated although death not imminent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead</td>
<td>20 Very sick; hospitalization necessary; active supportive treatment is necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Moribund; fatal processes progressing rapidly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 Moribund; fatal processes progressing rapidly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 Dead</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFORMANCE SCALE (PS) (E.-CO)**

**GRADE**

0 — Fully active, able to carry on all predisease activities without restriction (Karnofsky 90-100)
1 — Restricted in physically strenuous activity but ambulatory and able to carry out work of a light or sedentary nature. For example, light housework, office work (Karnofsky 70-80)
2 — Ambulatory and capable of all self-care but unable to carry out any work activities. Up and about more than 50% of waking hours (Karnofsky 50-60)
3 — Capable of only limited self-care, confined to bed or chair more than 50% of waking hours (Karnofsky 30-40)
4 — Completely disabled. Can not carry on any self-care. Totally confined to bed or chair (Karnofsky 10-20)
GENERAL ONCOLOGY DATA FORMS

The preparation of data collection forms that will fit the requirements of all cancer programs, hospitals, and clinics is difficult. The needs of institutions as to format and special content vary considerably. In general, there are four basic types of such data collection forms: (1) general oncologic; (2) specific site; (3) summary of extent of disease and treatment; and (4) follow-up.

Specific site forms are to be found in most of the specific anatomic site recommendations. Data identified to be collected is that considered essential to proper classification and staging of cancer at the anatomic site and does not represent a complete cancer history form. On the reverse side symbols and definitions are recorded. As yet, forms have not been standardized. Any of the suggested forms in this manual may be duplicated or revised to suit individual programs, hospitals, or institutions. The important thing is that essential data be collected to better serve the cancer patient through more accurate evaluation and more adequate management.

A list of the data that might be recorded for any cancer patient during diagnosis and treatment follows. These data are readily collectable on the form titled General Oncology Data Form used by the Commission on Cancer of the American College of Surgeons and published in its Manual for Cancer Programs. The form is copyrighted but may be duplicated for noncommercial use.

The summary form for extent of disease and for treatment is a satisfactory way to gather the information that allows each cancer to be classified and staged. It should be completed promptly to be sure the record actually contains this information and if it does not to discover such deficiency in time to correct it.

If cancer patients are to be managed properly, they must be followed at regular intervals as long as they live to be sure their treatment is adequate, to rehabilitate them so that the quality of life is the best attainable for them, and to watch for evidence of recurrent or new cancer. Performance status considering all cofactors should be measured and recorded; any of several scales may be used, such as the Karnofsky scale (recorded under H on Site-Specific Data Forms).

The follow-up form illustrated is essentially one devised at Duke University Medical School. The definitions of terms used on it and the codes that allow easy recording appear on the reverse side.

Proper recording of information about the biologic behavior of cancer, its response to treatment, and the prognosis related to various forms of therapy will provide uniformity of collection that makes possible meaningful exchange of information among physicians and among institutions.

### GENERAL ONCOLOGY DATA TO BE COLLECTED ON CANCER PATIENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Patient Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zip code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social security number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B. Family History of Cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ancestors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siblings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C. Previous History</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Previously diagnosed elsewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place original diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>D. Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary anatomic site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site code (ICD-0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histologic diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphologic code (ICD-0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnosis confirmed this institution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date first diagnosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods of diagnosis:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roentgenology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other, specify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stage at this admission:
   - In situ
   - Localized
   - Regional
   - Direct extension
   - Regional nodes
   - Both nodes and extension
   - Not applicable
   - Unknown
   - Distant
   - Not applicable

T ___ N ___ M ___ STAGE ___

Sequence this tumor:
   - First site
   - Subsequent site, specify other sites ____________

E. Pretreatment Performance Status
   - % Karnofsky scale or other appropriate scale

F. Treatment: First Course This Hospital

   Type of treatment (check all and record actual treatments and dates)
   - Surgery
   - Beam radiation
   - Other radiation
   - Chemotherapy
   - Hormone therapy
   - Endocrine surgery
   - Endocrine radiation
   - Immunotherapy
   - Supportive
   - Other treatment (none of above)
   - No treatment (specify reason)
   - Modified treatment (specify reason)

   Treatment considered
   - Curative
   - Palliative

G. Entered into protocol
   - Yes
   - No

H. Space for individualization and/or remarks (exposure to irradiation, hormonal drugs, etc.)

I. Miscellaneous

   Attending physicians ____________________________
   Responsible service or clinic ______________________
   Abstractor ________________________________
   Date of abstract ______________________________
   Reviewed by ________________________________

   Curative
   Palliative
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name (Last)</td>
<td>First (Middle/Maiden)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Security Number</td>
<td>Place of Birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative (Follow-up Contact)</td>
<td>Relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Street Address</td>
<td>Accession No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City</td>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifetime Occupation:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place Original Diagnosis</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous Treatment</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Referring Physician</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physician Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remarks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attending Physician(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstractor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Abstract</td>
<td>Reviewed By</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responsible Service/Clinic:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Data (Institutional Variations Here):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GENERAL ONCOLOGY DATA FORM**

**PRIMARY ANATOMIC SITE**

**SITE CODE (FCD-0)**

**HISTOLOGIC DIAGNOSIS**

**DATE OF ADMISSION**

**DATE FIRST DIAGNOSIS**

**CLASS OF CASE**

**ANALYTIC**

**NON-ANALYTIC**

**METHODS OF DIAGNOSIS**

- Autopsy
- Histology
- Cytology
- Pathology
- Other: Specify

**STAGE AT THIS ADMISSION**

- In Situ
- Localized
- Regional
- Directional Extension
- Regional Nodes
- Both Nodes and Extension
- Regional NOS

**SEQUENCE OF TUMOR**

- 1st Site
- Subsequent Site

- Specify all previous and subsequent sites and dates:

**PERFORMANCE STATUS**

- Pretreatment

**TYPE OF PRIMARY TREATMENT**

- Surgery
- Beam Radiation
- Other Radiation
- Chemotherapy
- Hormone Therapy
- Endocrine Surgery
- Endocrine Radiation Immunotherapy
- Supportive
- Other Treatment
- Palliative

**RECORD ACTUAL TREATMENTS AND DATE(S)**

**This case entered in protocol study: Yes**

COPYRIGHT 1974 AMERICAN COLLEGE OF SURGEONS. COMMISSION ON CANCER (slightly modified)
### FOLLOW-UP INFORMATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>46 DATE OF LAST CONTACT</th>
<th>47 SOURCE OF CONTACT (SEE CODES)</th>
<th>48 STATUS (SEE CODES)</th>
<th>49 QUALITY OF SURVIVAL (SEE CODES)</th>
<th>50 REMARKS:</th>
<th>51 SURVIVAL YEARS</th>
<th>51 SURVIVAL MONTHS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### CODES

- **Source of Contact**
  - 0 Hospital readmission
  - 1 Clinic or OPD visit
  - 2 M.D. office with physical exam
  - 3 M.D. office. No exam
  - 4 Direct patient contact
  - 5 Other, specify in remarks

- **Disease Status**
  - 0 No clinical evidence
  - 1 Local recurrence
  - 2 Residual cancer
  - 3 Metastatic disease
  - 4 Remission
  - 9 Unknown

- **Quality of Survival**
  - Performance Status
    - 0 Capable of normal activities
    - 1 Capable but not performing
    - 2 Limited capability
    - 3 Capable, extent unknown
    - 4 Incapable
    - 9 Alive. No other information
  - Reason for limitation
    - 0 None
    - 1 Cancer
    - 2 Residual of cancer treatment
    - 3 Psychological
    - 4 Other causes
    - 5 Cancer plus other causes
    - 9 Unknown
  - Nursing care needs
    - 0 None
    - 1 Needs part-time care
    - 2 Needs full-time care
    - 9 Care needs unknown

### TYPE OF TREATMENT

- Surgery
- Beam radiation
- Other radiation
- Chemotherapy
- Hormone therapy
- Endocrine surgery
- Endocrine radiation
- Immunotherapy
- Supportive
- Other treatment
- None of above

### RECORD ACTUAL TREATMENT AND RATES

### DATE OF DEATH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>53 DATE OF DEATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>54 PLACE OF DEATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CAUSE OF DEATH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>55 CAUSE OF DEATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AUTOPSY

- Yes, findings
- No
CANCER PATIENT FOLLOW-UP DATA FORM

I. Identification
   A. Patient's name
   B. Patient's number
   C. Secession number

II. Recapitulation initial workup
   A. Status
   B. Extent
   C. Performance status

III. Each entry (dated; if no change: check only)
   A. Status
      REM: Alive, no evidence of residual cancer (remission)
      PER: Alive, with evidence of persistent cancer
      REC: Alive, with evidence of recurrence (after remission)
      D/C: Dead, of cancer
      D/O: Dead, other causes
      D/U: Dead, unknown causes
      UN: Unknown (lost to F/U)
      NEW: Alive, untreated cancer
   B. Extent
      I/S: In situ
      LOC: Localized
      INV: Invasive primary disease
      LXM: Spread to regional lymph nodes
      MET: Metastatic
      DIF: Diffuse disease
      UN: Unknown
   C. Metastasis
      RLN: Regional lymph nodes
      LI: Liver
      LU: Lung parenchyma
      PER: Peritoneum
      CNS: Brain
      BO: Bone
      BM: Bone marrow
      SK: Skin
      PL: Pleura
      OT: Other (describe)
   D. Evidence for metastasis
      Bl: Biopsy
   E. Special site data: Here should be listed results of determinations of WBC, CEA, gonadotropins, etc., as appropriate in follow-up of a particular site
   F. Performance status (Karnofsky)
      100% Normal, no complaints; no evidence of disease
      90% Able to carry on normal activity; no major signs or symptoms of disease
      80% Normal activity with effort; some signs and symptoms of disease
      70% Cares for self; unable to carry on normal activity or do active work
      60% Requires occasional assistance but is able to care for most needs
      50% Requires considerable assistance and frequent medical care
      40% Disabled; requires special care and assistance
      30% Severely disabled; hospitalization is indicated, although death not imminent
      20% Very sick; hospitalization necessary; active supportive treatment is necessary
      10% Moribund, fatal processes progressing rapidly
   G. Reason for limitation (check all)
      ___ 0 None
      ___ 1 Cancer
      ___ 2 Residual of cancer treatment
      ___ 3 Psychological
      ___ 4 Other causes
      ___ 5 Cancer plus other causes
      ___ 6 Unknown
   H. Treatment given
      S: Surgical
      C: Chemotherapy
      R: Radiation
      RI: Radioisotopes
      IT: Immunotherapy
      E: Endocrine
      OT: Other
I. Supportive services needed
   N: Nursing
   R: Rehabilitation
   O: Other
   U: Unknown

J. Hospitalization
   1. Dates:
   2. Service:

K. Physical examination this visit
   ____yes ____no

L. In treatment protocol
   ____yes ____no

M. Death
   1. Date:
   2. Place:
   3. Autopsy ____yes ____no
# CANCER PATIENT FOLLOW-UP DATA FORM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recapitulation initial work-up</th>
<th>Accession no.:</th>
<th>Name:</th>
<th>Hx no.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New site of metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evidence for metastasis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason for limitation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment protocol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y: Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N: No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitalized:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Admission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D: Discharge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S: Service</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical exam:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y: Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N: No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of death</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of death</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autopsy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REPORTING OF CANCER SURVIVAL AND END RESULTS

To evaluate the efficacy of treatment and to provide a sound base for therapeutic planning for cancer patients, it is necessary to describe the survival and the results of treatment of different patient groups in comparable form. The objective of this report is to define a method of reporting end results that may be uniformly meaningful. Throughout this chapter, the term "survival time" is used, although the guidelines apply equally to reporting length of response time, time to recurrence of disease, time to development of tumor, or any other function of response time.

Certain basic information must be included in every report on cancer survival and end results. Such information should include:

1. A description of the cancer patients reported on
2. A definition of the starting time or "zero" time for the measurement of survival
3. An explanation of the method used in calculating survival rates

The specific definitions and methods used in a particular study will depend on the nature and purpose of that study.
**Description of Case Material**

Before any meaningful interpretation of survival data can be made, the case material from which the data are derived must be described. A fact not adequately appreciated is that the description of case material is quite independent of the actual mechanics of handling the data and determining survival rates.

In organizing the material for presentation, consideration should be given to the following:

1. **Reports should account for every case diagnosed as having the particular cancer under consideration.** If some cases are excluded, the characteristics and number of these cases should be stated. The report should give the dates during which the patients were studied and should state whether the results are based on the experience of an entire institution, on the experience of a single clinic or hospital service, or on the experience of a single physician or group of physicians. The general nature of the institution and the general characteristics of the patients should be indicated, because factors such as race and socioeconomic status may influence end results.

2. **All diagnoses should be confirmed histologically or cytologically.** Those not confirmed at any time during the course of the disease or at autopsy should be reported and tabulated separately. Where indicated, the findings for histologically distinct types of cancers should be reported separately. So that the effects of morphology on survival may be appreciated, reports should be stratified by histologic type where it is indicated.

3. **The clinical stage or anatomic extent of disease at the time of diagnosis is of particular importance in evaluating treatment and in making valid comparisons of end results reported from different sources.** Where it is applicable, patients should be stratified by stage of disease. The TNM system provides a common language for categorizing the primary lesion and the extent of involvement.

The TNM assignments are grouped into appropriate combinations to create a small number of stages, usually four, such that the force of mortality increases from one stage to the next.

Specific criteria modify this system according to the primary site. The "clinical-diagnostic" classification for cancer at certain accessible sites, such as the uterine cervix, includes all diagnostic and evaluative information obtained up to the date that tumor-directed treatment begins or the decision for no treatment is made. Information obtained by surgical exploration or histopathologic studies, or both, may be used in describing extent of disease at sites inaccessible to clinical evaluation, such as carcinoma of the ovary, kidney, and stomach. These cancers are reported in terms of "surgical-evaluative" stage or "postsurgical treatment-pathologic" stage of disease.

4. **Data on groups of patients previously treated should be presented separately from the data on new patients not previously treated. Such patients are classified according to the stage at time of retreatment.**

5. **The number of groups into which a patient series is subdivided will depend on the total number of patients, the purpose of the study, and the nature of the case material.** For example, in reporting on cancer of the prostate, the patients might be grouped into three age groups, such as: under 60, 60 to 69, and 70 and over. An entirely different age grouping would be used in reporting on patients with leukemia. Generally, it is desirable to subdivide with respect to histologic type, sex, stage, and treatment.

**Definition of Starting Time**

The starting time for determining survival of patients depends on the purpose of the study. For example, the starting time for studying the natural history of a particular cancer might be defined in reference to the appearance of the first symptom. Various reference dates are commonly used as starting times for evaluating the effects of therapy. These include: (1) date of diagnosis; (2) date of first visit to physician or clinic; (3) date of hospital admission; and (4) date of beginning treatment. If the time to recurrence of a tumor after apparent complete remission is being studied, the starting time is the date of apparent complete remission. The specific reference date used should be clearly specified in every report.

The date of initiation of therapy should be used as the starting time for evaluating therapy. For untreated patients, the most comparable date is the time at which it was decided that no tumor-directed treatment would be given. For both treated and untreated patients, the above times from which survival rates are calculated...
Vital Status

At any given time the vital status of each patient is defined as: alive, dead, or unknown (i.e., lost to follow-up). The end point of each patient's participation in the study is either (1) a specified "terminal event" such as death, or (2) survival to the completion of the study, or (3) loss to follow-up. In each case "survival" time is the time from the starting point to the terminal event, or to the end of the study, or to the date of last observation. This "survival" time may be further described in terms of patient status at the end point such as:

- Alive, tumor-free — no recurrence
- Alive, tumor-free — after recurrence
- Alive with recurrent or metastatic disease
- Alive with primary tumor
- Dead — tumor-free
- Dead — with cancer (primary, recurrent, or metastatic disease)
- Dead — postoperative
- Unknown — lost to follow-up

Completeness of the follow-up is crucial in any study of survival time because even a small number of patients lost to follow-up may bias the data.

Survival Intervals

The total survival time is broken up into arbitrary units or intervals in terms of days, months, or years. This provides a description of the population under study, with respect to the dynamics of survival, over a specified time. The time interval used should be selected with regard to the natural history of the disease under consideration. In diseases with a long natural history, the duration of study could be 5 to 10 years and survival intervals of 6 to 12 months will provide a meaningful description of the survival dynamics. If the population being studied has a very poor prognosis (e.g., patients with carcinoma of the esophagus or pancreas), the total duration of study may be 2 to 3 years and the survival intervals described in terms of 1 to 3 months. In interpreting survival rates one must also take into account the number of individuals entering a survival interval. Survival rates probably should not be computed for intervals in which fewer than 10 patients enter the interval alive.

Calculation of Survival Rates

A properly calculated survival rate is the best single statistical index available for measuring the efficacy of cancer therapy. The basic concept is simple: Of a given number of patients, what percentage will be alive at the end of a specified interval, such as 5 years? For example, let us begin with 1,000 patients in a defined diagnostic category such as localized carcinoma of the uterine cervix. If we observe each member of this group until she is dead and enumerate the women alive 5 years, 10 years, and 15 years after initiation of therapy, then the ratios of these numbers to the original 1,000 patients give respectively the 5-year, 10-year, and 15-year survival rates. In practice, however, we do not begin literally with a given group and follow them all continuously until death before calculating survival rates. In a body of actual data, the group considered will generally contain persons who were treated at different times, so that different persons will have been observed for different lengths of time. On the closing date of the study, some will be known to be dead, others will be known to be alive, and some will have been lost to follow-up and it will not be known whether they are alive or dead.

To illustrate the approach to dealing with this type of situation let us consider, in detail, a moderately small series of patients. Table 1 lists 50 patients with melanoma of the skin treated in one hospital during the 15-year period October 1952 to June 1967. The survival experience of these patients is to be assessed on the basis of information available through the end of 1969, that is, the nominal closing date of the study is Dec. 31, 1969. For each patient, the list provides the following basic information:

1. Sex
2. Age at initiation of treatment
3. Date treatment started (month and year)
4. Date of last contact (month and year)
5. Vital status at date of last contact (alive or dead)
6. Presence of melanoma at date of last contact (yes or no)

Patients are listed consecutively by date of first treatment.
Calculation by the Direct Method. — The simplest procedure for summarizing patient survival is to calculate the percentage of patients alive at the end of a specified interval such as 5 years, using for this purpose only patients exposed to the risk of dying for at least 5 years. This approach is known as the direct method.

In this set of data there were contacts with patients during 1969, but these contacts occurred during different months of the year. We know that all patients last contacted in 1969 were alive on Dec. 31, 1968, but we do not know whether they were all alive at the end of 1969. Thus, we will designate Dec. 31, 1968, as the effective closing date of the study. Consequently, all patients first treated on Jan. 1, 1964, or later were not at risk of dying for at least 5 years as of the closing date. This means that 20 of the 50 patients (numbers 31 to 50) must be excluded from the calculation by the direct method.

Examining the entries in the "vital status" column in Table 1 for the 30 patients at risk for at least 5 years, we find that 16 patients were alive at last contact and 14 had died before December 1968. However, patient 2, although known to have died in January 1960, had been alive on his fifth anniversary. Therefore we have 17 of the 30 patients alive 5 years after their respective dates of first treatment and, thus, the 5-year survival rate is 57%.

Calculation by the Actuarial Method. — The direct method for calculating a survival rate does not use all the information available. For example, we know that patient 31 died in the fourth year after treatment was started and that patient 32 lived for more than 4 years. Such information should be useful, but we were unable to use it under the rules of the direct method because the patients were diagnosed after December 1963.

The actuarial, or life-table, method provides a means for using all follow-up information accumulated up to the closing date of the study. The actuarial method has the further advantage of providing information on the survival pattern, that is, the manner in which the patient group was depleted during the total period of observation.

The procedures described here are designed for the individual investigator who wants to analyze carefully the survival experience of a small series of patients — in this illustration, 50 patients. However, the same underlying methodology is used in analyzing large series with electronic computers.

Patient Data Card. — To facilitate sorting and counting it is advisable to prepare a data card on each patient, such as the one shown in Figure 1. The upper part (above the double line) provides for the following items of basic descriptive information:

1. Name: a case number, in addition to the name, may be useful for identification
2. Age: completed years of age at time of initiation of treatment
3. Race and sex
4. Dates of first treatment and of last contact: month and year
5. Follow-up year of last observation (e.g., patient 2 died in the sixth year of observation, i.e., 5 years 6 months after initiation of treatment)
6. Vital status and presence of disease: information on presence or absence of cancer at time of death is highly desirable
7. Diagnostic: site of the tumor, histologic type, and stage of disease
8. Treatment: brief summary

Observed Survival Rate. — The life-table method for calculating a survival rate, using all the follow-up information available on the 50 patients under study, is illustrated in Table 2. There are six steps necessary in preparing such a table:

1. The patient data cards are tallied for vital status and follow-up year of last observation (columns 3 and 4). The sum of the entries in columns 3 and 4 must equal the total number of patients. Note that the 17 patients alive at the beginning of the last interval of observation in column 2 (6 years and over) were also entered in column 4 (number last seen alive during year).

2. The number of patients alive at the beginning of each year is entered in column 2 and is obtained by successive subtraction. Thus, of 50 patients alive at start of treatment, that is,
Table 1. — Listing of 50 White Patients With Melanoma of the Skin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient number</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Date treatment started</th>
<th>Date Last contact</th>
<th>Vital status*</th>
<th>Melanoma present?</th>
<th>Follow-up (years)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>Oct. 1952</td>
<td>Nov. 1952</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Jul. 1954</td>
<td>Jan. 1960</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>No†</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>Mar. 1955</td>
<td>Apr. 1955</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>Jun. 1955</td>
<td>Jul. 1956</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Sep. 1955</td>
<td>Oct. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>Oct. 1955</td>
<td>Aug. 1956</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>Apr. 1956</td>
<td>Feb. 1959</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Jan. 1957</td>
<td>Jan. 1957</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Jan. 1959</td>
<td>Nov. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Apr. 1959</td>
<td>Apr. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Sep. 1959</td>
<td>Aug. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Feb. 1960</td>
<td>May 1960</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>No†</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Feb. 1960</td>
<td>Nov. 1968</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Oct. 1961</td>
<td>Nov. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>Apr. 1962</td>
<td>Jul. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Apr. 1962</td>
<td>Oct. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>Oct. 1962</td>
<td>Jun. 1963</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Dec. 1962</td>
<td>Feb. 1963</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Sep. 1963</td>
<td>Nov. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>Nov. 1963</td>
<td>Feb. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>Nov. 1963</td>
<td>Apr. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>Dec. 1963</td>
<td>Sep. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>Mar. 1964</td>
<td>Aug. 1967</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Jul. 1964</td>
<td>Apr. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Mar. 1965</td>
<td>Dec. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>Apr. 1965</td>
<td>Jul. 1965</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Jun. 1965</td>
<td>Feb. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Jan. 1966</td>
<td>Nov. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Apr. 1966</td>
<td>Nov. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>May 1966</td>
<td>Jul. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Jul. 1966</td>
<td>Nov. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Sep. 1966</td>
<td>Sep. 1967</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>No†</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Sep. 1966</td>
<td>Dec. 1967</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>Oct. 1966</td>
<td>Apr. 1968</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>No†</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Apr. 1967</td>
<td>Jul. 1969</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>May 1967</td>
<td>Dec. 1968</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A, Alive; D, Dead.
†Died of intercurrent disease.
at the beginning of the first year of observation, 9 died during the first year and 41 were alive at the beginning of the second year.

3. The "effective number exposed to risk of dying" (column 5) is based on the assumption that patients last seen alive during any year of follow-up were, on the average, observed for one-half of that year. Thus, for the third year the "effective number" is 34 – (½ x 4) = 32.0, and for the fourth year it is 28 – (½ x 5) = 25.5.

4. The proportion dying during any year (column 6) is found by dividing the entry in column 3 by the entry in column 5. Thus, for the first year, the proportion dying is 9 ÷ 50.0 = 0.180 and for the second year it is 6 ÷ 40.5 = 0.148.

5. The proportion surviving the year (column 7), that is, the observed annual survival rate, is obtained by subtracting the proportion dying (column 6) from 1 (1.000).

6. The proportion surviving from first treatment to the end of each year (column 8), that is, the observed cumulative survival rate, is the product of the annual survival rates for the given year and all preceding years. For example, for the fifth year the proportion 0.567 is the product of all entries in column 7 from the first through the fifth years.

The 5-year survival rate calculated by the life-table method is 0.567 or 57%. In this instance, the calculation obtained by using the information available on all 50 patients agrees with the rate based on the 30 patients eligible for inclusion in the calculation by the direct method. Such close agreement by the two methods will usually not occur when some patients have to be excluded from the calculation of a survival rate by the direct method. In such instances, the life-table method is more reliable because it is based on more information.

One advantage of the life-table method is that it provides information about changes in the risk of dying in successive intervals of observation. Thus, we see from column 6 that the proportion of patients dying in each of the first 4 years after treatment decreased from 18% in the first year to 4% in the fourth. (The increase to 10% in the fifth year may be due to chance, since we are dealing here with small numbers — only 22 patients were alive at the beginning of the fifth year.)

Table 2. — Calculation of Observed Survival Rate by the Actuarial (Life-Table) Method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of last observation</th>
<th>No. alive at beginning of year</th>
<th>No. dying during year</th>
<th>No. last seen alive during year</th>
<th>Effective no. exposed to risk of dying</th>
<th>Proportion dying during year</th>
<th>Proportion surviving year of entry</th>
<th>Proportion surviving from first treatment to end of year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>0.380</td>
<td>0.820</td>
<td>0.820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>40.5</td>
<td>0.148</td>
<td>0.852</td>
<td>0.699</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>0.063</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>0.039</td>
<td>0.961</td>
<td>0.729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>0.098</td>
<td>0.902</td>
<td>0.567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥6</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fig. 2. Survival curves for patients with melanoma, colon cancer, and lung cancer: arithmetic scale. (Data from End Results Group: End Results in Cancer: Report No. 4 [DHEW Publication NIH 73-272], Bethesda, National Cancer Institute, 1972.)

The cumulative rates in column 8 may be used to plot survival curves, which provide a pictorial description of the survival pattern. In Figure 2, the survival pattern for patients with melanoma of the skin (based on a large series) is compared with the patterns for cancers of the colon and of the lung. The curves are shown for a 10-year period of observation.

The same set of survival rates was plotted in Figure 3 using a logarithmic scale, which provides a pictorial representation of changes in the rate at which patients are dying — a steep slope indicates a high rate, a shallow slope indicates a low rate. For each disease group, the death rate slowed appreciably after the third year; the slope of each curve becomes shallower. However, it is clear from Figure 3 that patients with lung cancer were dying at a greater rate from the third through the tenth years than patients with cancer of the colon or with melanomas. In contrast, examination of Figure 2 might lead one to the erroneous conclusion that beyond the third year, lung cancer patients died at a lower rate. This is because Figure 2 portrays absolute changes, while Figure 3 provides a true picture of relative changes.

Adjusted Survival Rate. — The observed survival rate described above accounts for all deaths, regardless of cause. While this is a true reflection of total mortality in the patient group, we are frequently interested in describing mortality attributable to the disease under study. Examination of Table 1 reveals that in four instances melanoma was not present at time of death (patients 2, 13, 42, and 44). Three of these deaths occurred within the first 5 years of follow-up and thus influenced the 5-year survival rate calculated in Table 2.

Whenever reliable information on cause of death is available, an adjustment can be made for deaths due to causes other than the disease under study. The procedure is shown in Table 3. Observed deaths are recorded as “with disease” (column 3a) or “without disease” (column 3b). Patients who died “without disease” are treated in the same manner as patients “last seen alive during year” (column 4), that is, both groups are withdrawn from the risk of dying from melanoma. Thus, “the effective number exposed to risk of dying” (from melanoma) in the second year of observation is equal to 41 – (½ [2 + 1]) = 39.5.

Fig. 3. Survival curves for patients with melanoma, colon cancer, and lung cancer: logarithmic scale. (Data from End Results Group: End Results in Cancer: Report No. 4 [DHEW Publication NIH 73-272], Bethesda, National Cancer Institute, 1972.)
Table 3. Calculation of Adjusted Survival Rate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of last observation</th>
<th>No. alive at beginning of year</th>
<th>No. dying during year</th>
<th>No. last seen alive during year</th>
<th>Effective no. exposed to risk of dying</th>
<th>Proportion dying during year</th>
<th>Proportion surviving to end of year</th>
<th>Cumulative proportion surviving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>49.5</td>
<td>0.162</td>
<td>0.838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>39.5</td>
<td>0.101</td>
<td>0.899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>0.063</td>
<td>0.937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>0.039</td>
<td>0.961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>0.098</td>
<td>0.902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥6</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The 5-year adjusted survival rate is 61% compared to an observed rate of 57%. The adjusted rate indicates that 61% of patients with melanoma escaped the risk of death from the disease within 5 years of treatment.

Use of the adjusted rate is particularly important in comparing patient groups that may differ with respect to factors such as sex, age, race, and socioeconomic status. Of the 50 patients listed in Table 1, 24 are males and 26 females. The observed survival curves are plotted in the upper part of Figure 4. There is a large gap between the curves for the two sexes. However, 3 of the 12 males who died during the first 5 years of observation had no evidence of melanoma at time of death. In contrast, melanoma was present at time of death in all eight females who died. The effect of the adjustment for cause of death is shown in the lower portion of Figure 4. The survival curve for males is still below the curve for females, but the gap has been narrowed. The 5-year adjusted survival rate is 58% for males and 65% for females. The corresponding observed rates are 48% and 65%, a much larger difference.

Relative Survival Rate. Information on cause of death is sometimes unavailable or unreliable. Under such circumstances, it is not possible to compute an adjusted survival rate. However, it is possible to account for differences among patient groups in "normal mortality expectation," that is, differences in the risk of dying from causes other than the disease under study. This can be done by means of the relative survival rate, which is the ratio of the observed survival rate to the expected rate for a group of people in the general population similar to the patient group with respect to race, sex, age, and calendar period of observation.

Table 4 provides 5-year "normal" survival probabilities for white males and females in the United States, based on mortality experience in calendar years 1950, 1955, 1960, and 1965. The appropriate probability, depending on the sex and age of the patient and the calendar year of entry to observation, is taken from this table and entered in the lower portion of the patient data card (Fig. 1). Thus, for example, for patient 2 (Table 1), who is a 42-year-old man with a 1954 date of entry, the 5-year expected survival probability is 0.979. For patient 17, a 31-year-old woman who entered observation in 1961, the expected probability is 0.995. Thus, for the hypothetical group of patients in Table 1, the

![Observed and Adjusted Survival Rates](image-url)
average expected 5-year survival probability is the sum of the individual probabilities (46.257) divided by the number of patients (50) and equals 0.92. The ratio of the observed (57%) to the expected survival rate (92%) is 62%. This is the relative rate and in this instance is almost identical with the adjusted rate.

While, in this illustration, 5-year results were used to depict the relative survival rate calculation, it is conventional to calculate relative survival rates for each interval and cumulatively for successive follow-up intervals. For the more detailed analysis, one must consult more extensive expected rate tables and more explicit methodology (see reference 6).

In Figure 5, comparison is made between the survival curves based on the observed, adjusted, and relative rates. It can be seen that the values along the adjusted and relative survival curves are not always nearly identical. In practice, if the series is not too small and the patients are roughly representative of the population of the United States (taking race, sex, and age into account), the relative survival rate provides a useful estimate of the probability of escaping the risk of dying from the specific disease under study. However, if reliable information on cause of death is available, it is preferable to use the adjusted rate. This is particularly true if the series is small or if the patients are largely drawn from a particular socioeconomic segment of the population.

In reporting on patient survival, the specific method used in calculating the rates must be specified. The different types of rates described above are all useful, but rates computed by different methods are not directly comparable with each other. Thus, in comparing the survival of different patient groups, rates must be computed by the same method.

### Standard Error of a Survival Rate

A survival rate describes the experience of the specific group of patients from which it is com-

![Fig. 5. Comparison of survival curves based on observed, adjusted, and relative rates (logarithmic scale).](image-url)
puted. These results are frequently used to generalize to a larger population or universe. The existence of universal values is postulated and these values are estimated from the group under study, which thus represents a sample from the larger population. If a survival rate were calculated from a second sample taken from the same universe, it is unlikely that the results would be exactly the same. The difference between the two results is called the sampling variation (chance variation or sampling error). The standard error is a measure of the extent to which sampling variation influences the computed survival rate.

In repeated observations, under the same conditions, the true or population survival rate will lie within the range of two standard errors on either side of the computed rate about 95 times in 100. This range is called the 95% confidence interval.

When the observed survival rate has been computed by the direct method, the standard error is computed from the formula

\[ \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} \]

where \( p \) is the survival rate and \( n \) is the number of patients exposed to risk of death. In the illustration of the direct method, a 5-year survival rate of 57% was obtained based on the experience of 30 patients (\( \frac{17}{30} = 0.567 \)). Thus, the standard error is equal to 0.090 (square root of \( [0.567 \times 0.433 \div 30] \)). To obtain the 95% confidence interval, twice the standard error is subtracted from and added to the survival rate. This means that the chances are about 95 in 100 that the true 5-year rate is between 39% and 75% for our example.

Standard Error of the Actuarial Survival Rate. — In order to calculate the standard error of the 5-year survival rate when the actuarial method is used (see references 2, 10, 12), two columns of figures may be added to Table 2 as shown in Table 5. The first additional column (column 9) is obtained by subtracting the values in column 3 from the values in column 5 of Table 2. The last column needed (column 10) is obtained by dividing the entries in column 6 by the corresponding figures in column 9. The sum of the figures in column 10 is also entered into the table and in this example equals 0.0176.

The standard error of the 5-year survival rate by the actuarial method is the calculated 5-year survival rate multiplied by the square root of the total of the entries in column 10 of Table 5, that is, \( \sqrt{0.0177} = 0.075 \). The approximate 95% confidence interval for the population 5-year survival rate is found, as shown earlier for the direct method, by adding and subtracting two times the standard error to and from the 5-year survival rate that has been calculated, that is, 0.567 plus and minus \( 2 \times 0.075 \), which gives an interval from 0.42 to 0.72.

If the above computations seem to be too involved, an approximation to the standard error of the actuarial survival rate may be quickly obtained from published tables prepared by Ederer (see reference 5).

It is noteworthy that the standard error of the survival rate obtained by the actuarial method is smaller than the standard error of the survival rate calculated by the direct method \( (0.076 \text{ vs. } 0.090) \). This difference reflects the advantage in terms of statistical reliability of using all available information, that is, information on patients under observation for less than 5 years. The issue is discussed in detail in reference 2.

Standard Error of Relative Survival Rate. — The standard error of the relative survival rate is easily obtained by dividing the standard error of the observed survival rate (obtained by either the direct or actuarial method) by the expected survival rate. Thus from the actuarial method the 5-year survival rate is 57% and the expected survival rate is 92% with a resulting relative survival rate of 62%. The standard error of the observed survival rate is 0.075.

In this example the standard error of the 5-year relative survival rate is:

\[ \frac{0.075}{0.920} \]

The 95% confidence limits for the 5-year relative survival rate are therefore:

\[ 0.62 \pm 2(0.08) = 0.46, 0.78. \]

Comparison of Survival Rates in Two Patient Groups. — In comparing survival rates of two patient groups, the statistical significance of the observed difference is of interest. The essential question is: What is the probability that the observed difference may have occurred by chance? The standard error of the survival rate provides a simple means for appraising this
Table 5. — Calculation of Standard Error of Survival Rate by Actuarial (Life-Table) Method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of last observation</th>
<th>No. alive at beginning of year</th>
<th>No. dying during year</th>
<th>No. last seen alive during year</th>
<th>Effective no. exposed to risk of dying</th>
<th>Proportion dying during year</th>
<th>Proportion surviving from first treatment to end of year</th>
<th>Entry (5) minus entry (3)</th>
<th>Entry (6) divided by entry (9)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50.0</td>
<td>0.180</td>
<td>0.820</td>
<td>0.820</td>
<td>41.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>40.5</td>
<td>0.148</td>
<td>0.852</td>
<td>0.699</td>
<td>34.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>0.063</td>
<td>0.937</td>
<td>0.655</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>0.039</td>
<td>0.961</td>
<td>0.629</td>
<td>24.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>0.098</td>
<td>0.902</td>
<td>0.567</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥6</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0177</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standard Error of 5-Year Survival Rate = 5-Year Survival Rate × \( \sqrt{\text{Total of Column (10)}} \)

\[ = 0.567 \times \sqrt{0.0177} - 0.567 \times 0.1330 - 0.075 \]

question. If the 95% confidence intervals of two survival rates do not overlap, the observed difference would be customarily considered as statistically significant, that is, unlikely to be due to chance.

Standard statistical texts describe the z-test, which provides a numeric estimate of the probability that the observed difference occurred by chance. The statistic z is calculated by the formula:

\[ z = \frac{p_1 - p_2}{\sqrt{(SE_1)^2 + (SE_2)^2}} \]

in which

- \( p_1 \) is the survival rate for group 1,
- \( p_2 \) is the survival rate for group 2,
- \( p_1 - p_2 \) is the absolute value of the difference,
- \( SE_1 \) is the standard error of \( p_1 \), and
- \( SE_2 \) is the standard error of \( p_2 \).

If \( z \geq 1.96 \), the probability that the observed difference occurred by chance is \( \leq 5\% \). If \( z \geq 2.56 \), the probability is \( \leq 1\% \).

For more precise and more refined methods for testing the statistical significance of observed differences in the survival experience of two patient groups see references 3, 4, 7, 9, 11.

REFERENCES


PART II. STAGING OF CANCER AT SPECIFIC ANATOMIC SITES
STAGING OF CANCER AT HEAD AND NECK SITES
ORAL CAVITY, PHARYNX, LARYNX, and PARANASAL SINUSES*

Cancers of the head and neck occur on all lining membranes of the upper aerodigestive tract. The "T" classifications indicating the extent of the primary tumor are generally similar but differ in specific details for each site because of anatomic considerations. The "N" classification for cervical lymph node metastasis is uniform for all head and neck sites. The staging systems presented in this chapter are all clinical-diagnostic staging, based on the best possible estimate of the extent of disease before treatment. Although surgical-evaluative classifications and pathologic classifications are possible, they are of less practical importance in the management of these tumors. However, when surgical treatment is carried out, cancer of the head and neck can be staged during these time periods of management utilizing all information available.

This chapter presents the clinical-diagnostic staging classification for four major head and neck sites: the oral cavity, the pharynx (nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx), the larynx, and paranasal sinuses.

ORAL CAVITY

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The oral cavity extends from the skin-vermillion junction of the lips to the junction of the hard and soft palate above and to the line of circumvallate papillae below and is divided into the following specific areas:

Lip — The lip begins at the junction of the vermillion border with the skin and includes only the vermillion surface or that portion of the lip which comes into contact with the opposing lip. It is well defined into an upper and lower lip joined at the commissures of the mouth.

Buccal Mucosa — This includes all the membrane lining of the inner surface of the cheeks and lips, from the line of contact of the opposing lips to the line of attachment of mucosa of the alveolar ridge (upper and lower) and pterygomandibular raphe.

Lower Alveolar Ridge — This ridge includes the alveolar process of the mandible and its covering mucosa, which extends from the line of attachment of mucosa in the buccal gutter to the line of free mucosa of the floor of the mouth. Posteriorly, it extends to the ascending ramus of the mandible.

Upper Alveolar Ridge — The upper ridge is the alveolar process of the maxilla and its covering mucosa, which extends from the line of attachment of mucosa in the upper gingival buccal gutter to the junction of the hard palate. Its posterior margin is the upper end of the pterygopalatine arch.

Retromolar Gingiva (Retromolar Triangle) — This is the attached mucosa overlying the ascending ramus of the mandible from the level of the posterior surface of the last molar tooth to the apex superiorly, adjacent to the tuberosity of the maxilla.

Floor of the Mouth — This is a semilunar space over the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles, extending from the inner surface of the lower alveolar ridge to the undersurface of the tongue. Its posterior boundary is the base of the anterior pillar of the tonsil. It is divided into two sides by the frenulum of the tongue and contains the ostia of the submaxillary and sublingual salivary glands.

Hard Palate — This is the semilunar area between the upper alveolar ridge and the mucous membrane covering the palatal process of the maxillary palatine bones. It extends from the inner surface of the superior alveolar ridge to the posterior edge of the palatine bone.

Anterior Two-Thirds of the Tongue (Oral Tongue) — This is a freely mobile portion of the tongue which extends anteriorly from the line of circumvallate papillae to

*Note: Definitions of T and M vary somewhat from those published by the UICC for lip, oral cavity, oropharynx, nasopharynx, hypopharynx, and larynx for trial periods ending in 1977 or earlier.
the undersurface of the tongue at the junction of the floor of the mouth. It is composed of four areas: the tip, the lateral borders, the dorsum, and the undersurface (nonvillous surface of the tongue).

1.2 Nodal Stations: The main routes of drainage are into the first station nodes, which are the jugulodigastric, jugulomohyoid, upper deep cervical, lower deep cervical, and submaxillary and submental lymph nodes. Some primary sites drain bilaterally. Second station nodes include parotid lymph nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to the lungs is common; skeletal or hepatic metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The assessment of the primary tumor is based upon inspection and palpation of the oral cavity and neck. Additional studies may include plain, tomographic, and contrast roentgenograms, particularly evaluating bone invasion of the mandible or upper alveolus. Examinations for distant metastases include chest film, blood chemistries, blood count, and other routine studies as indicated.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Confirmation of the extent of disease is made by biopsy of suspected mucosal or submucosal spread, aspiration, or open biopsy of suspicious nodes. Biopsy of suspected distant metastasis is desirable but not required.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Complete resection of primary sites and radical nodal dissections allow for the use of this designation. Specimens that are resected after radiation and/or chemotherapy need to be especially noted.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Utilization of available procedures noted above is required, particularly confirmation by biopsy since previous treatment by surgery or irradiation leads to scarring and induration. A reevaluation for distant metastases is important as well as T and N classifications.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX No available information on primary tumor
TO No evidence of primary tumor
TIS Carcinoma in situ
T1 Greatest diameter of primary tumor less than 2 cm
T2 Greatest diameter of primary tumor 2 to 4 cm
T3 Greatest diameter of primary tumor more than 4 cm
T4 Massive tumor greater than 4 cm in diameter with deep invasion to involve antrum, pterygoid muscles, root of tongue, or skin of neck

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Cervical Node Classification — The following regional node classification is applicable to all malignant head and neck tumors. In clinical evaluation, the actual size of the nodal mass should be measured and allowance should be made for intervening soft tissues. It is recognized that most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes, but are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. There are three stages of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is not required, but is recommended. Midline nodes are considered as homolateral nodes.

NX Nodes cannot be assessed
NO No clinically positive nodes
N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
N2  Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter

N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N3  Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)

N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter

N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)

N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed

MO  No (known) distant metastasis

M1  Distant metastasis present
    Specify ________________
    Specify sites according to the following notations:
    
    Pulmonary - PUL
    Osseous - OSS
    Hepatic - HEP
    Brain - BRA
    Lymph Nodes - LYM
    Bone Marrow - MAR
    Pleura - PLE
    Skin - SKI
    Eye - EYE
    Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor

R1  Microscopic residual tumor

R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
    Specify ________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I  T1 NO MO

Stage II T2 NO MO

Stage III T3 NO MO
    T1 or T2 or T3, N1, MO

Stage IV T4, NO or N1, MO
    Any T, N2 or N3, MO
    Any T, Any N, M1

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma; pathologic diagnosis is required to utilize this classification. Tumor grading is recommended utilizing Broders’ classification. Other tumors of glandular epithelium, odontogenic apparatus origin, lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, and bone and cartilage origin require special consideration and are not to be included. Reference to the WHO nomenclature is recommended.

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1  Well-differentiated

G2  Moderately well-differentiated

G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated
    Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
### DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Identification</th>
<th>Institutional Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Hospital or Clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital or Clinic Number</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age ______ Sex ______ Race __</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ONCOLOGY RECORD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic Site of Cancer</th>
<th>Histologic Cell Type</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of Classification*</th>
<th>cTNM</th>
<th>sTNM</th>
<th>pTNM</th>
<th>rTNM</th>
<th>aTNM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date of Classification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — ORAL CAVITY

**Status Before Treatment Anywhere**

- **Location of Tumor**
  - Lips: Upper
  - Buccal mucosa
  - Floor of mouth
  - Oral tongue
  - Hard palate
  - Gingivae: Upper: Lower
  - Retromolar trigone

- **Size of Tumor**
  - <2 cm ______
  - 2-4 cm ______
  - >4 cm _____

- **Characteristics of Tumor**
  - Exophytic
  - Superficial
  - Moderately infiltrating
  - Deeply infiltrating
  - Ulcerated
  - Extends to or overlies bone
  - Gross erosion of bone
  - Radiographic destruction of bone

**Involvement of Neighboring Regions**

- Tonsillar pillar or soft palate
- Nasal cavity or antrum
- Nasopharynx
- Pterygoid muscles
- Soft tissues or skin of neck

**Regional Lymph Nodes (check one only)**

- ND ______
- N1 ______
- N2a ______
- N2b ______
- N3a ______
- N3b ______
- N3c ______

**If bilateral nodes present, stage each side separately:**

- Right ______
- Left ______

**Distant Metastasis**

- MX ______
- MD ______
- M1 ______

**Specify ______**

**Classification**

- T ______
- N ______
- M ______

**Stage ______**

**Residual Tumor**

- R ______

**Host — Performance Status (H)**

- H ______

*Scale used: AJC Zubrod Karnofsky*  
*cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaualtive; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic, rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.*
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION
Primary Tumor (T)
- **TX**: Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules
- **TO**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **TIS**: Carcinoma in situ
- **T1**: Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest diameter
- **T2**: Tumor greater than 2 cm but not greater than 4 cm in greatest diameter
- **T3**: Tumor greater than 4 cm in greatest diameter
- **T4**: Massive tumor greater than 4 cm in diameter with deep invasion to involve antrum, pterygoid muscles, root of tongue, or skin of neck

Nodal Involvement (N)
- **NX**: Nodes cannot be assessed
- **NO**: No clinically positive node
- **N1**: Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
- **N2**: Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
  - **N2a**: Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter
  - **N2b**: Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
- **N3**: Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)
  - **N3a**: Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter
  - **N3b**: Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a: left, N1)
- **N3c**: Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

Distant Metastasis (M)
- **MX**: Not assessed
- **MO**: No (known) distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis present
  - Specify
  - Specify sites according to the following notations:
    - Pulmonary - PUL
    - Bone Marrow - MAR
    - Osseous - OSS
    - Pleura - PLE
    - Hepatic - HEP
    - Skin - SKI
    - Brain - BRA
    - Eye - EYE
    - Lymph Nodes - LYM
    - Other - OTH

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma

GRADE
- Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

STAGE GROUPING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Residual Tumor (R)
- **R0**: No residual tumor
- **R1**: Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2**: Macroscopic residual tumor
  - Specify

HOST (H) — **Performance** Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zambrow scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The pharynx is divided into three regions: nasopharynx, oropharynx, and hypopharynx. Each region is subdivided into sites that are designated below:

Nasopharynx — The anterior limit of the nasopharynx is the choana, through which it is continuous with the nasal cavity. Its roof is attached to the base of the skull and slopes downward to become continuous with the posterior pharyngeal wall. The lateral wall is composed of the torus tubarius, the eustachian tube orifice, and that portion of the mucosa of the fossa of Rosenmueller extending up to its apex and junction with the roof. The inferior limit of the nasopharynx is level with the plane of the hard palate.

Oropharynx — The oropharynx extends from the plane of the hard palate, superiorly, to the plane of the hyoid bone, inferiorly, and is continuous with the oral cavity. The faucial arch includes both the surfaces of the entire soft palate and the uvula, the anterior border and base of the anterior tonsillar pillar, and the line of the circumvallate papillae. The base of the tongue extends from the line of the circumvallate papillae to the junction with the base of the epiglottis (the vallecula) and includes the pharyngoepiglottic and glossoepiglottic folds. The lateral wall of the oropharynx is comprised largely of the tonsil and tonsillar fossae. The posterior tonsillar pillar, the narrow lateral wall, and the posterior wall comprise the pharyngeal wall.

Hypopharynx — The hypopharynx extends from the plane of the hyoid bone, superiorly, to the plane of the lower border of the cricoid cartilage inferiorly. It is made up of three distinct regions: the pyriform sinus, the posterior surface of the larynx (the postcricoid area), and the lower posterior pharyngeal wall.

The division of the pharynx into three regions and the sites within each region are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGION</th>
<th>SITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nasopharynx</td>
<td>- Posterior superior wall (vault)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Lateral wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oropharynx</td>
<td>- Faucial arch including soft palate, uvula, and anterior tonsillar pillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Tonsillar fossa and tonsil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Base of tongue including glossoepiglottic and pharyngoepiglottic folds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Pharyngeal wall including lateral and posterior walls and posterior tonsillar pillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypopharynx</td>
<td>- Pyriform sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Postcriocid area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Posterior hypopharyngeal wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 Nodal Stations: The main routes of drainage are into the first station nodes — jugulodigastric, jugulo-omohyoid, upper deep cervical, lower deep cervical, and submaxillary and submental lymph nodes. Some primary sites drain bilaterally. There are additional first station nodes that include retropharyngeal and parapharyngeal lymph nodes. Second station nodes include parotid nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to lungs is common. Skeletal and other distant metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The assessment of the pharynx is based primarily upon inspection by indirect mirror examination and direct endoscopy. Palpation of sites (when feasible) and neck nodes is essential. Neurologic evaluation of all cranial nerves is required. Additional studies include plain, tomographic, and contrast roentgenograms of the pharynx according to the site of interest. Examinations for distant metastases include chest film, blood chemistries, blood count, and other routine studies as indicated.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Confirmation of the extent of disease by biopsy of
suspected mucosal or submucosal spread, aspirations or open biopsy of suspicious nodes, and biopsy of suspected distant metastases is desirable, but not required.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Complete resection of primary sites and radical nodal dissections allow for the use of this designation. Specimens that are resected after radiation and/or chemotherapy need to be especially noted.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Utilization of available procedures noted above is required, particularly confirmation by biopsy since previous treatment by surgery or irradiation leads to scarring and induration. A reevaluation for distant metastases is important as well as T and N classifications.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

T0 No evidence of primary tumor

T1 Tumor confined to the site of origin or no tumor visible (positive biopsy only)

T2 Tumor involving two sites (both posterosuperior and lateral walls)

T3 Extension of tumor into nasal cavity or oropharynx

T4 Tumor invasion of skull or cranial nerve involvement, or both

Oropharynx:

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest diameter

Nasopharynx:

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor confined to one site of nasopharynx or no tumor visible (positive biopsy only)

T2 Tumor involving two sites (both posterosuperior and lateral walls)

T3 Extension of tumor into nasal cavity or oropharynx

T4 Massive tumor greater than 2 cm, but not greater than 4 cm in greatest diameter

T3 Tumor greater than 4 cm in greatest diameter

T4 Massive tumor greater than 4 cm in diameter with invasion of bone, soft tissues of neck, or root (deep musculature) of tongue

Hypopharynx:

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor confined to the site of origin

T2 Extension of tumor to adjacent region or site without fixation of hemilarynx

T3 Extension of tumor to adjacent region or site with fixation of hemilarynx

T4 Massive tumor invading bone or soft tissues of neck

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Cervical Node Classification — The following regional node classification is applicable to all malignant head and neck tumors. In clinical evaluation, the actual size of the nodal mass should be measured and allowance should be made for intervening soft tissues. It is recognized that most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes, but are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues in the neck. There are three stages of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is not required, but is recommended. Midline nodes are considered as homolateral nodes.

NX Nodes cannot be assessed

ND No clinically positive node

N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
N2  Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter

N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N3  Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)

N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter

N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)

N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed

MO  No (known) distant metastasis

M1  Distant metastasis present
    Specify ___________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor

R1  Microscopic residual tumor

R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
    Specify ___________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I  T1 NO MO

Stage II T2 NO MO

Stage III T3 NO MO
    T1 or T2 or T3, N1, MO

Stage IV T4, NO or N1, MO
    Any T, N2 or N3, MO
    Any T, Any N, M1

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma; pathologic diagnosis is required to utilize this classification. Tumor grading is recommended utilizing Broders’ classification. Other tumors of glandular epithelium, odontogenic apparatus origin, lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, and bone and cartilage origin require special consideration and are not to be included. Reference to the WHO nomenclature is recommended.

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1  Well-differentiated

G2  Moderately well-differentiated

G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated
    Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
**DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING**

**Patient Identification**
- Name
- Address
- Hospital or Clinic Number
- Age
- Sex
- Race

**Institutional Identification**
- Hospital or Clinic
- Address

**ONCOLOGY RECORD**

**Anatomic Site of Cancer**
**Histologic Cell Type**
**Grade**

**Time of Classification**

**Date of Classification**

**cTNM** **sTNM** **pTNM** **rTNM** **aTNM**

**SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — PHARYNX**

**Status Before Treatment Anywhere — Primary Tumor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Tumor</th>
<th>Site of Origin (check one)</th>
<th>Site(s) also involved</th>
<th>Anatomic extent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nasopharynx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterosuperior wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oropharynx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fauclial arch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tonsillar fossa, tonsil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base of tongue</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharyngeal wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypopharynx</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyriform fossa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postcricoid area</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Characteristics of Tumor (check one)**
- Superficial
- Exophytic
- Moderate infiltration
- Deep infiltration

**Regional Lymph Nodes (check one only; diagram)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Right</th>
<th>Left</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a, N2b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3a, N3b, N3c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If bilateral nodes present, stage each side separately.

**Distant Metastasis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MX</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>Specify</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sites: Lung</td>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Classification**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stage**

**Residual Tumor**

**Host — Performance Status (H)**

| H | Scale used: AJC | Zubrod | Karnofsky |

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules
TO No evidence of primary tumor
Nasopharynx
TIS Carcinoma in situ
T1 Tumor confined to one site of nasopharynx or no tumor visible (positive biopsy only)
T2 Tumor involving two sites (both posterosuperior and lateral walls)
T3 Extension of tumor into nasal cavity or oropharynx
T4 Tumor invasion of skull or cranial nerve involvement, or both
Oropharynx
TIS Carcinoma in situ
T1 Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest diameter
T2 Tumor greater than 2 cm, but not greater than 4 cm in greatest diameter
T3 Tumor greater than 4 cm in greatest diameter
T4 Massive tumor greater than 4 cm in diameter with invasion of bone, soft tissues of neck, or root (deep musculature) of tongue
Hypopharynx
TIS Carcinoma in situ
T1 Tumor confined to the site of origin
T2 Extension of tumor to adjacent region or site without fixation of hemilarynx
T3 Extension of tumor to adjacent region or site with fixation of hemilarynx
T4 Massive tumor invading bone or soft tissues of neck
Nodal Involvement (N)
NX Nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No clinically positive node
N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
N2 Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter
N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
N3 Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)
N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter
N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)
N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only
Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify
Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Skin - SKI
Osseous - OSS
Bone Marrow - MAR
Eye - EYE
Hepatic - HEP
Pleura - PLE
Other - OTH
Brain - BRA

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Predominant cancer is either a squamous cell carcinoma or undifferentiated transitional cell carcinoma
GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4
STAGE GROUPING

Stage I
T1 NO MO
Stage II
T2 NO MO
Stage III
T3 NO MO T1 or T2 or T3, N1, MO
Stage IV
T4, NO or N1, MO Any T, N2 or N3, MO Any T, Any N, M1

Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host
H0 Normal activity
H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self
H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance
H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed
H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization

ECOG/ Zubrod scale  Karnofsky scale (%)
0 90-100
1 70-80
2 50-60
3 40-60
4 20-40
LARYNX

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The following anatomic definition of larynx allows classification of carcinomas arising in the encompassed mucous membranes, but excludes cancers arising on the lateral or posterior pharyngeal wall, pyriform fossa, postcricoid area, and the vallecula or base of tongue.

The anterior limit of the larynx is composed of the anterior or lingual surface of the suprahyoid epiglottis, the thyrohyoid membrane, the anterior commissure, and the anterior wall of the subglottic region which is composed of the thyroid cartilage, the cricothyroid membrane, and the anterior arch of the cricoid cartilage.

The posterior and lateral limits include the aryepiglottic folds, the arytenoid region, the interarytenoid space, and the posterior surface of the subglottic space represented by the mucous membrane covering the cricoid cartilage.

The superolateral limits are composed of the tip and the lateral borders of the epiglottis.

The inferior limits are made up of the plane passing through the inferior edge of the cricoid cartilage.

For purposes of this clinical-stage classification, the larynx is divided into three regions: supraglottis, glottis, and subglottis. The supraglottis is composed of the epiglottis (both its lingual and laryngeal aspects), aryepiglottic folds, arytenoids, and ventricular bands (false cords). The inferior boundary of the supraglottis is a horizontal plane passing through the apex of the ventricle. The glottis is composed of the true vocal cords, including the anterior and posterior commissures. The lower boundary is the horizontal plane 1 cm below the apex of the ventricle. The subglottis is the region extending from the lower boundary of the glottis to the lower margin of the cricoid cartilage.

The division of the larynx is summarized in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGION</th>
<th>SITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supraglottis</td>
<td>Ventricular bands (false cords)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Arytenoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Epiglottis (both lingual and laryngeal aspects)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suprahyoid epiglottis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Infrahoid epiglottis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aryepiglottic folds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottis</td>
<td>True vocal cords including anterior and posterior commissures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subglottis</td>
<td>Subglottis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 Nodal Stations: The first station nodes include jugulodigastric, jugulomohyoid, paratracheal, and deep cervical nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to lungs is common. Skeletal and other distant metastases occur less often. Mediastinal lymph node metastases are considered distant metastases.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The assessment of the larynx is accomplished primarily by inspection utilizing indirect mirror examination and direct laryngoscopy. Additional studies include plain films of soft tissue, tomograms, contrast roentgenograms (e.g., laryngograms), and barium studies of the pharynx according to suspected extension and spread. Nodal stations are examined by careful palpation. Examinations for distant metastases include chest film, blood chemistries, blood count, and other routine studies as indicated.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Confirmation of the extent of disease by biopsy of suspected mucosal or submucosal spread, aspirations or open biopsy of suspicious nodes, and biopsy of suspected distant metastases is desirable, but not required.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Complete resection of primary sites
and radical nodal dissections allow for the use of this designation. Specimens that are resected after radiation and/or chemotherapy need to be especially noted.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Utilization of available procedures noted above is required, particularly confirmation by biopsy since previous treatment by surgery or irradiation leads to scarring and induration. A reevaluation for distant metastases is important as well as T and N classifications.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules as listed in 2.0

TO No evidence of primary tumor

Supraglottis:

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor confined to region of origin with normal mobility

T2 Tumor involves adjacent supraglottic site(s) or glottis without fixation

T3 Tumor limited to larynx with fixation and/or extension to involve postcricoid area, medial wall of pyriform sinus, or pre-epiglottic space

T4 Massive tumor extending beyond the larynx to involve oropharynx, soft tissues of neck, or destruction of thyroid cartilage

Glottis:

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor confined to vocal cord(s) with normal mobility (includes involvement of anterior or posterior commisures)

T2 Supraglottic and/or subglottic extension of tumor with normal or impaired cord mobility

T3 Tumor confined to the larynx with cord fixation

T4 Massive tumor with thyroid cartilage destruction and/or extension beyond the confines of the larynx

Subglottis:

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor confined to the subglottic region

T2 Tumor extension to vocal cords with normal or impaired cord mobility

T3 Tumor confined to larynx with cord fixation

T4 Massive tumor with cartilage destruction or extension beyond the confines of the larynx or both

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Cervical Node Classification — The following regional node classification is applicable to all malignant head and neck tumors. In clinical evaluation, the actual size of the nodal mass should be measured and allowance should be made for intervening soft tissues. It is recognized that most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes, but are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. There are three stages of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is not required, but is recommended. Midline nodes are considered as homolateral nodes.

NX Nodes cannot be assessed

NO No clinically positive node

N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter

N2 Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter

N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N3 Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)

N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter

N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)

N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify _______________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor

R1 Microscopic residual tumor

R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify _______________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I T1 N0 M0

Stage II T2 N0 M0

Stage III T3 N0 M0

T1 or T2 or T3 N1 M0

Stage IV T4, N0 or N1, M0

Any T, N2 or N3, M0

Any T, Any N, M1

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma; pathologic diagnosis is required to utilize this classification. Tumor grading is recommended utilizing Broders' classification. Other tumors of glandular epithelium, odontogenic apparatus origin, lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, and bone and cartilage origin require special consideration and are not to be included. Reference to the WHO nomenclature is recommended.

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated

G2 Moderately well-differentiated

G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Name ____________________________  Hospital or Clinic ____________________________
Address __________________________  Address ____________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number ____________
Age ____  Sex ____  Race ____

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer ____________  Histologic Cell Type ____________________________
Grade ____________________________
Time of Classification* cTNM ____  sTNM ____  pTNM ____  rTNM ____  aTNM ____
Date of Classification ____________________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — LARYNX

Status Before Treatment Anywhere

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Tumor</th>
<th>Site of origin (check one)</th>
<th>Site(s) also involved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supraglottis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventricular band</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arytenoid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suprahypoglotis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrahypoglotis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aryepiglottic fold</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocal cords (incl. commissures)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subglottis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Characteristics of Tumor

| Superficial  |                           |
| Exophytic    |                           |
| Moderate infiltration |                       |
| Deep infiltration |                         |
| Impaired cord mobility |                     |
| Cord fixation  |                           |
| Cartilage destruction |                     |
| Tumor confined to larynx |                   |
| Tumor extension to:  |
| Base of tongue   |                           |
| Pyriform sinus   |                           |
| Postcricoid region |                      |
| Pre-epiglottic space |                      |
| Trachea         |                           |
| Soft tissue or skin of neck |                 |

Regional Lymph Nodes (check one only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N0</th>
<th>N1</th>
<th>N2a</th>
<th>N2b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>N3b</td>
<td>N3c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If bilateral nodes present, stage each side separately.

Right ______  Left ______

Distant Metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MX</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>Specify</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sites: Lung</td>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Classification

T _______  N _______  M _______

Stage ________

Residual Tumor

R _______

Host — Performance Status (H)

H Scale used: AJC _______  Zubrod _______  Karnofsky _______

*cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
### Tumor Classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Tumor (T)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supraglottis</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIS</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to region of origin with normal mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor involving adjacent supraglottic site(s) or glottis without fixation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor limited to larynx with fixation and/or extension to involve posterior cricoid area, medial wall of pyriform sinus, or pre-epiglottic space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Massive tumor extending beyond the larynx to involve oropharynx, soft tissues of neck, or destruction of thyroid cartilage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glottis</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIS</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to vocal cord(s) with normal mobility (including involvement of anterior or posterior commissures)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Supraglottic and/or subglottic extension of tumor with normal or impaired cord mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor confined to the larynx with cord fixation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Massive tumor with thyroid cartilage destruction and/or extension beyond the confines of the larynx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subglottis</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIS</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumor confined to the subglottic region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumor extension to vocal cords with normal or impaired cord mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumor confined to larynx with cord fixation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Massive tumor with cartilage destruction or extension beyond the confines of the larynx, or both</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nodal Involvement (N)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No clinically positive node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td>Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3a</td>
<td>Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3b</td>
<td>Bilaterally clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3a: right, N2a: left, N1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3c</td>
<td>Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distant Metastasis (M)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>Not assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
<td>No (known) distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Distant metastasis present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HISTOPATHOLOGY**

Predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma of undifferentiated carcinoma — also adenocarcinoma and others

**GRADES**

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3, 4

### STAGE GROUPING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Stage</th>
<th>Nodal Stage</th>
<th>Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>T1 N0 M0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2 N0 M0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>T3 N0 M0</td>
<td>N0 or N1</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4, N0 or N1, M0</td>
<td>N2 or N3, M0</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T, N2 or N3, M0</td>
<td>Any T, Any N, M1</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Residual Tumor (R)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tumor Stage</th>
<th>Nodal Stage</th>
<th>Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R0</td>
<td>No residual tumor</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Microscopic residual tumor</td>
<td>N0 or N1</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>Macroscopic residual tumor</td>
<td>N2 or N3</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ECOG**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Status of Host</th>
<th>ECOG/ Karnofsky Scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0 Normal activity</td>
<td>0 90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1 70-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2 50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3 30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4 10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PARanasal Sinuses

1.0 Anatomy

1.1 Primary Site: Cancer of the maxillary sinus is the most common of the paranasal sinus cancers; it is the only site to which the following classification applies. The ethmoid sinuses and nasal cavity may ultimately be similarly defined with further study. Tumors of the sphenoid and frontal sinuses are so rare as to not warrant staging.

Ohngren's line, a theoretic plane joining the medial canthus of the eye with the angle of the mandible, may be used to divide the maxillary antrum into the anteroinferior portion (the infrastructure) and the superoposterior portion (the suprastructure).

1.2 Nodal Stations: The major lymphatic drainage of the maxillary antrum is via the lateral and inferior collecting trunks to first station submaxillary, parotid, and jugulodigastric nodes and via superoposterior trunk to retropharyngeal and deep cervical nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to lungs is most common; occasionally there is spread to bone and remote lymph nodes.

2.0 Rules for Classification

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The assessment of primary maxillary antrum tumors is based upon inspection and palpation, including examination of the orbit, nasal and oral cavities, and nasopharynx and neurologic evaluation of the cranial nerves. Radiographic studies include plain films and tomograms for evaluation of bone destruction. Neck nodes are assessed by palpation. Examinations for distant metastases include chest film, blood chemistries, blood count, and other routine studies as indicated.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Confirmation of the extent of disease by biopsy of suspected mucosal or submucosal spread, aspirations or open biopsy of suspicious nodes, and biopsy of suspected distant metastases is desirable, but not required.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Complete resection of primary sites and radical nodal dissections allow for the use of this designation. Specimens that are resected after radiation and/or chemotherapy need to be especially noted.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Utilization of available procedures noted above is required, particularly confirmation by biopsy since previous treatment by surgery or irradiation leads to scarring and induration. A reevaluation for distant metastases is important as well as T and N classifications.

3.0 TNM Classification

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules as listed in 2.0
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Tumor confined to the antral mucosa of the infrastructure with no bone erosion or destruction
T2 Tumor confined to the suprastructure mucosa without bone destruction, or to the infrastructure with destruction of medial or inferior bony walls only
T3 More extensive tumor invading skin of cheek, orbit, anterior ethmoid sinuses, or pterygoid muscle
T4 Massive tumor with invasion of cribiform plate, posterior ethmoids, sphenoid, nasopharynx, pterygoid plates, or base of skull

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Cervical Node Classification — The following regional node classification is applicable to all malignant head and neck tumors. In clinical evaluation, the actual size of the nodal mass should be measured and allowance should be made for intervening soft tissues. It is recognized that most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes but are confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues
of the neck. There are three stages of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is not required, but is recommended. Midline nodes are considered as homolateral nodes.

NX Nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No clinically positive node
N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
N2 Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter
N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
N3 Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)
N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter
N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)
N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

Specify sites according to the following notations:
- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify ________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I T1 N0 M0
Stage II T2 N0 M0
Stage III T3 N0 M0
Stage IV T4, N0 or N1, M0
Any T, N2 or N3, M0
Any T, Any N, M1

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is squamous cell carcinoma; pathologic diagnosis is required to utilize this classification. Tumor grading is recommended utilizing Broders' classification. Other tumors of glandular epithelium, odontogenic apparatus origin, lymphoid tissue, soft tissue, and bone and cartilage origin require special consideration and are not to be included. Reference to the WHO nomenclature is recommended.

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated
G2 Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated
Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
### DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Identification</th>
<th>Institutional Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>Hospital or Clinic Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital or Clinic Number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age ______ Sex ______ Race ______</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ONCOLOGY RECORD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic Site of Cancer</th>
<th>Histologic Cell Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of Classification*</td>
<td>cTNM sTNM pTNM rTNM aTNM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Classification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — PARanasal Sinuses

#### Status Before Treatment Anywhere

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Tumor</th>
<th>Site of origin (check one)</th>
<th>Site(s) also involved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antrum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrastructure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suprastructure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal cavity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Characteristics of Tumor

Radiographic destruction of bone
Invasion of adjacent areas
Skin
Palate
Nasopharynx
Cribriform plate
Orbit
Base of skull
Pterygoid muscles
Pterygoid bone

#### Regional Lymph Nodes (check one only)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N0</th>
<th>N3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>N3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2a</td>
<td>N3c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If bilateral nodes present, stage each side separately.

Right ______ Left ______

#### Distant Metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MX</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>Specify</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sites: Lung</td>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Classification

T ____ N ____ M ____

#### Stage ____

#### Residual Tumor

R ____

### Host — Performance Status (H)

H ____ Scale used: AJC ____ Zubrod ____ Karnofsky ____

cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
**DEFINITIONS**

**TNM CLASSIFICATION**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- **TX**: Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **T1**: Tumor confined to the antral mucosa of the infrastructure with no bone erosion or destruction
- **T2**: Tumor confined to the suprastructure mucosa without bone destruction, or to the infrastructure with destruction of medial or inferior bony walls only
- **T3**: More extensive tumor invading skin of cheek, orbit, anterior ethmoid sinuses, or pterygoid muscle
- **T4**: Massive tumor with invasion of cribriform plate, posterior ethmoids, sphenoid, nasopharynx, pterygoid plates, or base of skull

**Nodal Involvement (N)**
- **NX**: Nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No clinically positive node
- **N1**: Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
- **N2**: Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
- **N2a**: Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter
- **N2b**: Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
- **N3**: Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)
- **N3a**: Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter
- **N3b**: Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)
- **N3c**: Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- **MX**: Not assessed
- **M0**: No (known) distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis present

Specify ________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:
- Pulmonary - PUL
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Skin - SKI
- Osseous - OSS
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Eye - EYE
- Hepatic - HEP
- Pleura - PLE
- Other - OTH
- Brain - BRA

**HISTOPATHOLOGY**

Predominant cancer is squamous cell or undifferentiated carcinoma; also adenocarcinoma and others

**GRADE**

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

**STAGE GROUPING**

- **Stage I**: T1 N0 M0
- **Stage II**: T2 N0 M0
- **Stage III**: T3 N0 M0
- **Stage IV**: T4, N0 or N1, M0
  - Any T, N2 or N3, M0
  - Any T, Any N, M1

**Residual Tumor (R)**
- **R0**: No residual tumor
- **R1**: Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2**: Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify ________________

**HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H</th>
<th>Normal activity</th>
<th>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</th>
<th>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</th>
<th>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</th>
<th>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ECOG/ Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS

Presently a retrospective study is under way in which 900 cases of malignant salivary gland tumor are being evaluated at various institutions in this country. After this evaluation, the material will be analyzed and a classification and staging system will be developed. The classification and staging system will be clinical most likely. However, tumours may be staged as surgical-evaluative and postsurgical-pathologic treatment. However, until this material is available, the following suggested classification of tumors of salivary gland origin will be used. No stage grouping at present is recommended.

In this proposed classification system for tumors of the salivary gland, the histologic classification used is a modification of the WHO classification of salivary gland tumors. The salivary glands included are the parotid, submandibular, and sublingual.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The salivary glands include the parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The first station nodes are immediately adjacent to the salivary glands and include parotid, submaxillary, and submental lymph nodes. The first station also includes the jugulo-digastric and jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes as well as the other deep cervical nodes.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The assessment of primary tumor includes inspection and palpation and neurologic evaluation of the seventh cranial or other nerves. Radiologic studies may include films of the mandible and possibly sialograms.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: This should be based on all clinical data as well as that obtained on surgical exploration of the salivary gland and the nodal areas, but not the pathologic data obtained on the resected specimen if a definitive resection of the cancer is carried out.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: The surgical pathology report and all other available data should be used to assign a pathologic classification to those patients who have a resection of the cancer.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: After a cancer has once been treated definitively with a disease-free interval but recurs, the recurrence can be reclassified using all available information; the patient should again be staged utilizing procedures noted for clinical-diagnostic and surgical-evaluative classifications.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules as listed in 2.0

T0 No evidence of primary tumor

T1 Tumor 0 to 2 cm in diameter, solitary, freely mobile, facial nerve intact* (*applicable to parotid tumors only)

T2 Tumor 2 to 4 cm in diameter, solitary, freely mobile or reduced mobility or skin fixation, and facial nerve intact* (*applicable to parotid tumors only)

T3 Tumor 4 to 6 cm in diameter, or multiple nodes, skin ulceration, deep fixation, or facial nerve dysfunction* (*applicable to parotid tumors only)

T4 Tumor >6 cm in diameter and/or involving mandible and adjacent bones

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Cervical Node Classification — The following regional node classification is applicable to all malignant head and neck tumors. In clinical evaluation, the actual size of the nodal mass should be measured and allowance should be made for intervening soft tissues. It is recognized that most masses over 3 cm in diameter are not single nodes, but are
confluent nodes or tumor in soft tissues of the neck. There are three stages of clinically positive nodes: N1, N2, and N3. The use of subgroups a, b, and c is not required, but is recommended. Midline nodes are considered as homolateral nodes.

NX Nodes cannot be assessed
N0 No clinically positive node

N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter

N2 Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter

N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N3 Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)

N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter

N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is N3b: right, N2a; left, N1)

N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify ________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended, but tumor extent should be noted using TNM categories.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The histologic classification recommended is a modification of the WHO classification of salivary gland tumors. The major malignant varieties include:
- Acinic cell carcinoma
- Adenoid cystic carcinoma (cylindroma)
- Adenocarcinoma
- Epidermoid carcinoma
- Carcinoma in pleomorphic adenoma (malignant mixed tumor)
- Mucoepidermoid:
  - (a) well-differentiated
  - (b) poorly differentiated
  - Other

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated
G2 Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

**Patient Identification**
Name ____________________________
Address ____________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number __________
Age ______ Sex ______ Race ______

**Institutional Identification**
Hospital or Clinic _______________________
Address ____________________________

**ONCOLOGY RECORD**
Anatomic Site of Cancer _______________________
Histologic Cell Type _______________________
Grade _______________________
Time of Classification* _______________________
Date of Classification _______________________

**Site-Specific Information — Salivary Glands**

**Location of Tumor**
- Parotid
- Submaxillary
- Sublingual
- Side
  - Right
  - Left
  - Bilateral

**Size of Tumor**
- Largest diameter ___ cm

**Characteristics of Tumor**
- Mobile
- Limited mobility
- Fixed
- Hard
- Soft
- Cystic
- Adjacent tissues involved
  - No ______ Yes ______

**Nerve involvement**
- None
- Facial
- Hypoglossal
- Lingual
- Vagus
- Other
- Partial paralysis
- Complete paralysis

**Regional Lymph Nodes (check one only)**
- NX ______
- N0 ______
- N1 ______
- N2a ______
- N2b ______
- N3a ______
- N3b ______
- N3c ______

If bilateral nodes present, stage each separately.
- Right ______
- Left ______

**Distant Metastasis**
- MX ______
- MO ______
- M1 ______

Sites: Lung ________ Bone ________ Liver ________ Other ________

**Classification**
- T ______
- N ______
- M ______

**Stage**
- No stage grouping recommended

**Residual Tumor**

**Host — Performance Status (H)**
- H ______
  Scale used: AJC ________ Zubrod ________ Karnofsky ________

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.

51
**DEFINITIONS**

**TNM CLASSIFICATION**

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- **TX**: Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules as listed in 2.0
- **T0**: No evidence of primary tumor
- **T1**: Tumor 0 to 2 cm in diameter, solitary, freely mobile, facial nerve intact* (applicable to parotid tumors only)
- **T2**: Tumor 2 to 4 cm in diameter, solitary, freely mobile or reduced mobility or skin fixation, and facial nerve intact*
  (applicable to parotid tumors only)
- **T3**: Tumor 4 to 6 cm in diameter, or multiple nodes, skin ulceration, deep fixation, or facial nerve dysfunction*
  (applicable to parotid tumors only)
- **T4**: Tumor >6 cm in diameter and/or involving mandible and adjacent bones

**Nodal Involvement (N)**
- **NX**: Nodes cannot be assessed
- **N0**: No clinically positive node
- **N1**: Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter
- **N2**: Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
  - **N2a**: Single clinically positive homolateral node, 3 to 6 cm in diameter
  - **N2b**: Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter
- **N3**: Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)
  - **N3a**: Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter
  - **N3b**: Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a: left, N1)
  - **N3c**: Contralateral positive node(s) only

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- **MX**: Not assessed
- **M0**: No (known) distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis present
  Specify ___________________________

  Specify sites according to the following notations:

  | Pulmonary - PUL | Lymph Nodes - LYM | Skin - SKI |
  | Osseous - OSS | Bone Marrow - MAR | Eye - EYE |
  | Hepatic - HEP | Pleura - PLE | Other - OTH |
  | Brain - BRA |

**HISTOPATHOLOGY**

Mucoepidermoid, adenoidcystic, squamous cell, acinic cell, undifferentiated

**GRADE**

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

**STAGE GROUPING**

No stage grouping is recommended at present

**Residual Tumor (R)**
- **R0**: No residual tumor
- **R1**: Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2**: Macroscopic residual tumor
  Specify ___________________________

**HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE THYROID

Thyroid cancer is now being evaluated by the review of over 1,000 protocols with the goal of developing a staging system for cancer at this anatomic site. There is currently no satisfactory staging system for these tumors. Even without a staging system, collection of data describing extent of disease is still desirable so a temporary classification using TNM symbols is suggested together with a data form for cancer staging. The classification will undoubtedly be modified and refined after completion of the protocol evaluation. The UICC also has described rather similar TNM categories but states “no stage grouping is at present recommended.” Earlier (1968) the AJC had recommended staging of thyroid cancer but histologic types were not separated nor was the follow-up period sufficient to identify the various biologic types of tumor. As a result, the recommendations were not accepted, necessitating the current reconsideration.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The thyroid gland ordinarily is composed of a right and a left lobe lying adjacent and lateral to the upper trachea and esophagus. An isthmus connects the two lobes and in some cases a pyramidal lobe is present extending upward anterior to the thyroid cartilage.

1.2 Nodal Stations: Lymphatic drainage from the thyroid gland is in several directions: to the tracheoesophageal nodes bilaterally, to upper anterior mediastinal nodes, to the delphian node overlapping the thyroid cartilage, to nodes of the jugular chain bilaterally, and toward the base of the skull to retropharyngeal nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread occurs by contiguous, lymphatic, or hematogenous routes, for example to lungs and bones, although many other sites may be involved. Involvement of mediastinal lymph nodes is considered as distant spread.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: This should be based on the extent of thyroid cancer as determined by history, physical examination, and such laboratory tests that may contribute to the diagnosis, that is, isotope scan, ultrasound, etc.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: This should be based on all clinical data as well as that obtained on surgical exploration of the thyroid gland and the nodal areas, but not the pathologic data obtained on the resected specimen if a definitive resection of the cancer is carried out.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: The surgical pathology report and all other available data should be used to assign a pathologic classification to those patients who have a resection of the cancer.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: After a cancer has once been treated definitively with a disease-free interval but recurs, the recurrence can be reclassified using all available information; the patient should again be staged utilizing procedures noted for clinical and surgical-evaluative classifications.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No available information on primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Mobile tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Mobile tumor 4 cm or less in greatest diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Mobile tumor over 4 cm in greatest diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Fixed tumor, any size, with or without neurologic involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>Lateral position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Midline position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Massive fixation of tumor, any size, with or without neurologic involvement; fistula</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

NX  Nodes cannot be assessed
N0  No palpable nodes
N1  Palpable mobile node or nodes
   N1a  Homolateral only
   N1b  Contralateral only
   N1c  Bilateral and/or midline
N2  Any palpable fixed node

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed
M0  No (known) distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis present
   Specify ________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

  Pulmonary - PUL
  Osseous - OSS
  Hepatic - HEP
  Brain - BRA
  Lymph Nodes - LYM
  Bone Marrow - MAR
  Pleura - PLE
  Skin - SKI
  Eye - EYE
  Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
   Specify ________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping for thyroid cancer is recommended at this time

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The WHO classification of thyroid cancer should be adopted using at least the four major types.

Papillary (with or without follicular foci)
Follicular (note extent of invasion of tumor capsule)
Medullary
Undifferentiated (anaplastic)
Unclassified

6.2 TUMOR GRADE (G)

G1  Well-differentiated
G2  Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

Eventually each major type may need to be staged separately because of the great variations in biologic behavior.

In addition to classification the following characteristics of the primary tumor should be noted: size, multicentricity, blood vessel invasion, and invasion through thyroid capsule (equivalent to clinical fixation).

7.0 REFERENCES


DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ___________________________ Hospital or Clinic ___________________________
Address ___________________________ Address ___________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number _________________
Age _____ Sex _____ Race _____

ONCOLOGY RECORD
Anatomic Site of Cancer ___________________________ Histologic Cell Type ___________________________
Grade ___________________________
Time of Classification* cTNM _____ sTNM _____ pTNM _____ rTNM _____ aTNM _____
Date of Classification ___________________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — THYROID

History
History of previous irradiation to head and neck area
Yes _______ No _______
Other endocrine disease present
Yes _______ No _______
Family history of thyroid cancer
Yes _______ No _______
Family history of endocrine tumors
Yes _______ No _______

Primary Tumor
Location:
Right _______ Left _______ Midline _______
Size:
Largest diameter _______ cm.
Characteristics:
Single _______ Multiple _______ Bilateral _______
Fixation (extension through thyroid capsule)
Yes _______ Massive _______ No _______
Neurologic involvement
Yes _______ No _______
Blood vessel invasion
Yes _______ No _______
Radioactive scan done
Yes _______ (Type) _______ No _______
Cold _______ Hot _______ Neither _______

Regional Lymph Nodes
NX _______
N0 _______
N1a _______
N1b _______
N1c _______
N2 _______

Classification
T _______ N _______ M _______

Stage
No stage grouping recommended

Residual Tumor
(R) ___________________________

Host — Performance Status (H)
H _____ Scale used: AJC _____ Zubrod _____ Karnofsky _____
*CTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
TX  Tumor that cannot be assessed by rules
T0  No available information on primary tumor
T1  Mobile tumor
   T1a  Mobile tumor 4 cm or less in greatest diameter
   T1b  Mobile tumor over 4 cm in greatest diameter
T2  Fixed tumor, any size, with or without neurologic involvement
   T2a  Lateral position
   T2b  Midline position
T3  Massive fixation of tumor, any size, with or without neurologic involvement; fistula

Nodal Involvement (N)
NX  Nodes cannot be assessed
N0  No palpable nodes
N1  Palpable mobile node or nodes
   N1a  Homolateral only
   N1b  Contralateral only
   N1c  Bilateral and/or midline
N2  Any palpable fixed node

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX  Not assessed
M0  No (known) distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis present

Specify ________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Osseous - OSS
- Pleura - PLE
- Hepatic - HEP
- Skin - SKI
- Brain - BRA
- Eye - EYE
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Other - OTH

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Papillary, follicular, medullary, undifferentiated, unclassified
Eventually each major type may need to be staged separately because of the great variations in biologic behavior.
In addition to classification the following characteristics of the primary tumor should be noted: size, multicentricity, blood vessel invasion, and invasion through thyroid capsule (equivalent to clinical fixation).

STAGE GROUPING
No stage grouping for thyroid cancer is recommended at this time

GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

Residual Tumor (R)
R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify ________________

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>70-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE LUNG

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The mucosa lining the bronchus is the usual site of origin of cancer of the lung. The trachea, which lies in the anterior mediastinum, divides into a right and a left main bronchus that extend into the right and left lungs, respectively, and then divide into lobar bronchi for the upper, middle, and lower lobes on the right and the upper and lower lobes on the left. The lungs are encased in membranes called visceral pleura and the chest cavity is lined by a similar membrane called parietal pleura. The potential space between these two membranes is the pleural space.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The first station lymph nodes are the intrapulmonary, peribronchial, and hilar lymph nodes which are contained within the visceral pleural reflections. Second station lymph nodes are those in the mediastinum and may be paraesophageal, subcarinal, paratracheal, aortic, and pretracheal or retrotracheal. Involvement of scalene and more distant nodes is considered distant metastasis.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Lung cancer may metastasize to any distant site, the more common being scalene, supraclavicular, and other cervical lymph nodes, liver, brain, bones, adrenals, kidney, and contralateral lung, including contralateral hilar lymph nodes.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: This should be based on the anatomic extent of the disease that can be detected by examination before thoracotomy or the implementation of any treatment. Such an examination may include a medical history, physical examination, routine and special roentgenograms, endoscopic examinations including bronchoscopy, esophagoscopy, mediastinoscopy, mediastinotomy, thoracentesis, or thoracopy, and any other examinations, including those used to demonstrate the presence of extrathoracic metastasis.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: This should be based on all of the data obtained for the clinical-diagnostic classification and on information obtained at the time of exploratory thoracotomy, including biopsy but not including that information obtained by complete examination of a therapeutically resected specimen.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: The surgical pathology report, and all other available data, should be used to assign a postsurgical treatment classification to those patients who have a resection.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: In the course of follow-up examinations, a patient may manifest evidence of progressive disease indicating treatment failure. Before initiating further treatment, the extent of tumor should be carefully reassessed, using all available information, and the patient should again be staged under the retreatment classification.

2.5 Autopsy Staging: In case of death of a lung cancer patient, the extent of the cancer, if any, found at autopsy may be recorded by the TNM system and an autopsy stage may be reported.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX Tumor proven by the presence of malignant cells in bronchopulmonary secretions but not visualized roentgenographically or bronchoscopically, or any tumor that cannot be assessed

T0 No evidence of primary tumor

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1 A tumor that is 3.0 cm or less in greatest diameter, surrounded by lung or visceral pleura, and without evidence of invasion proximal to a lobar bronchus at bronchoscopy

T2 A tumor more than 3.0 cm in greatest diameter, or a tumor of any size that either invades the visceral pleura or has associated atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis extend-
ing to the hilar region. At bronchoscopy, the proximal extent of demonstrable tumor must be within a lobar bronchus or at least 2.0 cm distal to the carina. Any associated atelectasis or obstructive pneumonia must involve less than an entire lung, and there must be no pleural effusion.

T3 A tumor of any size with direct extension into an adjacent structure such as the parietal pleura or chest wall, the diaphragm, or the mediastinum and its contents; or a tumor demonstrable bronchoscopically to involve a main bronchus less than 2.0 cm distal to the carina; or any tumor associated with atelectasis or obstructive pneumonia of an entire lung or pleural effusion.

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

N0 No demonstrable metastasis to regional lymph nodes.

N1 Metastasis to lymph nodes in the peribronchial or the ipsilateral hilar region, or both, including direct extension.

N2 Metastasis to lymph nodes in the mediastinum.

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed.

M0 No (known) distant metastasis.

M1 Distant metastasis present. Specify ____________.

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor.

R1 Microscopic residual tumor.

R2 Macroscopic residual tumor. Specify ____________.

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

Occult Carcinoma

TX N0 M0
An occult carcinoma with bronchopulmonary secretions containing malignant cells but without other evidence of the primary tumor or evidence of metastasis to the regional lymph nodes or distant metastasis.

Stage I

TIS N0 M0
Carcinoma in situ.

T1 N0 M0
T1 N1 M0
T2 N0 M0
A tumor that can be classified T1 without any metastasis or with metastasis to the lymph nodes in the peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilar region only, or a tumor that can be classified T2 without any metastasis to nodes or distant metastasis.

Note: TX N1 M0 and T0 N1 M0 are also theoretically possible, but such a clinical diagnosis would be difficult if not impossible to make. If such a diagnosis is made, it would be included in stage I.

Stage II

T2 N1 M0
A tumor classified as T2 with metastasis to the lymph nodes in the peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilar region only.

Stage III

T3 with any N or M
T2 with any T or M
M1 with any T or N
Any tumor more extensive than T2, or any tumor with metastasis to the lymph nodes in the mediastinum, or any tumor with distant metastasis.

Note: Staging grouping is significant for all cell types listed in 6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY except undiffer-
6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 There are four major cell types of lung cancer:

1. Squamous cell (epidermoid) carcinoma
2. Adenocarcinoma including alveolar cell or terminal bronchiolar carcinoma
3. Undifferentiated large cell carcinoma
4. Undifferentiated small cell (oat cell) carcinoma

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated
G2 Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

7.0 PERFORMANCE STATUS OF HOST (H)

7.1 Several systems for recording a patient's activity and symptoms are in use and are more or less equivalent as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ECOG/Zubrod</th>
<th>Karnofsky</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AJC</td>
<td>scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H0 Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.0 REFERENCES


DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ____________________________ Institutional Identification
Address ____________________________ Hospital or Clinic ____________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number ____________________________ Address ____________________________
Age ___ Sex ___ Race ___

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer ____________________________ Histologic Cell Type ____________________________
Grade ____________________________
Time of Classification ______ cTNM _____ sTNM _____ pTNM _____ rTNM _____ aTNM_____
Date of Classification ____________________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — LUNG
Directions: Encircle the T, N, and M rating that is most accurate for the patient's cancer. Encircle the value for each rating and add to obtain the total value. Consult the table at the bottom of the form to determine the stage.

Primary Tumor (T) Value
TX 0
T0 0
TIS 1
T1 1
T2 2
T3 4

Regional Lymph Nodes (N) Value
N0 0
N1 1
N2 4

Distant Metastasis (M) Value
M0 0
M1 4

Total Value ____________________________

Classification
T ___ N ___ M___

Stage ____________________________

Residual Tumor (R) ____________________________

Host — Performance Status (H)
H Scale used: AJC ___ Zubrod ___ Karnofsky ___

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)

TX Tumor proven by the presence of malignant cells in bronchopulmonary secretions but not visualized roentgenographically or bronchoscopically, or any tumor that cannot be assessed

T0 No evidence of primary tumor

Tis Carcinoma in situ

T1 Tumor 3.0 cm or less in greatest diameter, surrounded by lung or visceral pleura, and without evidence of invasion proximal to a lobar bronchus or bronchoscopy

T2 Tumor more than 3.0 cm in greatest diameter, or a tumor of any size that either invades the visceral pleura or has associated atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis extending to the hilar region. At bronchoscopy, the proximal extent of demonstrable tumor must be within a lobar bronchus or at least 2.0 cm distal to the carina. Any associated atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis must involve less than an entire lung and there must be no pleural effusion

T3 Tumor of any size with direct extension into an adjacent structure such as the parietal pleura or the chest wall, the diaphragm, or the mediastinum and its contents, or a tumor demonstrable bronchoscopically to involve a main bronchus less than 2.0 cm distal to the carina, or any tumor associated with atelectasis or obstructive pneumonitis of an entire lung or pleural effusion

Nodal Involvement (N)

N0 No demonstrable metastasis to regional lymph nodes

N1 Metastasis to lymph nodes in the peribronchial or the ipsilateral hilar region, or both, including direct extension

N2 Metastasis to lymph nodes in the mediastinum

Distant Metastasis (M)

Mx Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Osseous - OSS
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Hepatic - HEP
- Pleura - PLE
- Brain - BRA
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Squamous cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, undifferentiated large cell, undifferentiated small cell (oat cell cancer)

GRADE

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

STAGE GROUPING

Occult stage TX N0 M0 Occult carcinoma with bronchopulmonary secretions containing malignant cells but without other evidence of the primary tumor or evidence of metastasis to the regional lymph nodes or distant metastasis

Stage I

Tis N0 M0 Carcinoma in situ

T1 N0 M0 Tumor that can be classified T1 without any metastasis or with metastasis to the lymph nodes in the peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilar region only

T1 N1 M0 or a tumor that can be classified T2 without any metastasis to nodes or distant metastasis

T2 N0 M0

NOTE: TX N1 M0 and T0 N1 M0 are also theoretically possible, but such a clinical diagnosis would be difficult if not impossible to make. If such a diagnosis is made, it should be included under stage / i

Stage II

T2 N1 M0

Tumor classified as T2 with metastasis to the lymph nodes in the peribronchial and/or ipsilateral hilar region only

Stage III

T3 with any N or M Any tumor more extensive than T2, or any tumor with metastasis to the lymph nodes in the mediastinum, or any tumor with distant metastasis

N2 with any T or M

M1 with any T or N

Residual Tumor (R)

R0 No residual tumor

R1 Microscopic residual tumor

R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

H0 Normal activity

H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self

H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance

H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed

H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization

ECOG/ Karnofsky

Zubrod Scale scale (%)

0 90-100

1 70-80

2 50-60

3 30-40

4 10-20
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE ESOPHAGUS

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: For purposes of classification, staging, and reporting of cancer of the esophagus, the esophagus is considered as consisting of three principal regions. These regions are to be classified and reported separately. The cervical esophagus extends from the pharyngeal-oesophageal junction (the cricopharyngeal sphincter) down to the level of the thoracic inlet, about 18 cm from the upper incisor teeth. The upper and midthoracic esophagus extends from the thoracic inlet to a point 10 cm above the esophagogastric junction, which is usually at the level of the lower border of the eighth thoracic vertebra and about 31 cm from the upper incisor teeth. The lower thoracic esophagus extends from a point 10 cm above the esophagogastric junction to the cardiac orifice of the stomach, which is about 40 cm from the upper incisor teeth.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The regional lymph nodes for the cervical esophagus are the cervical or supraclavicular nodes, or both. For the thoracic esophagus, the regional nodes are the adjacent mediastinal lymph nodes. Involvement of more distant nodes is considered distant metastasis.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: The liver, lungs, and adrenals are the commonest sites of distant metastases in other organs. Remote metastasis from carcinoma of the esophagus, while ultimately fatal, often carries a better intermediate prognosis than when the primary lesion has extended outside the esophagus, a condition that is rapidly fatal.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: This classification is based on the anatomic extent of cancer that can be detected by examination before any treatment. Such an examination may include a medical history, physical examination, routine and special roentgenograms, endoscopic ex-
aminations including mediastinoscopy, mediastinotomy, thoracentesis, or thoracoscopy, and other special examinations including those used to demonstrate the presence of distant metastasis.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Patients on whom evaluative procedures are performed, such as exploratory thoracotomy (including biopsy), are included in this classification. The surgical- evaluative classification should be based on all data obtained for the clinical classification and information derived from exploratory surgery, including biopsy of mediastinal and abdominal nodes but not including information obtained by gross and histologic examination of therapeutically resected specimens.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Esophageal cancer patients having similar therapeutic resections may be classified in a postsurgical treatment classification. This classification should be based on all data described in the clinical-diagnostic and surgical-evaluative classifications, as well as on information derived from complete histologic examination of resected specimens.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: In the course of follow-up examinations, a patient may manifest evidence of progressive disease indicating treatment failure. Before initiating further treatment, the extent of tumor should be carefully reassessed, using all available information, and the patient should again be staged under the retreatment classification.

2.5 Autopsy Staging: In case of death of an esophageal cancer patient, the extent of the cancer, if any is found at autopsy, may be recorded by the TNM system and an autopsy stage may be reported.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T) (for all three segments of the esophagus)

T0 No demonstrable tumor in the esophagus

TIS Carcinoma in situ

65
T1  A tumor that involves 5 cm or less of esophageal length, that produces no obstruction*, and that has no circumferential involvement and no extraesophageal spread;

T2  A tumor that involves more than 5 cm of esophageal length without extraesophageal spread† or a tumor of any size which produces obstruction* or that involves the entire circumference but without extraesophageal spread

T3  Any tumor with evidence of extraesophageal spread†

*Roentgenographic evidence of significant impediment to the passage of liquid contrast material past the tumor or endoscopic evidence of esophageal obstruction.

†Extension of cancer outside the esophagus is seen by clinical, roentgenographic, or endoscopic evidence of:
1. Recurrent laryngeal, phrenic, or sympathetic nerve involvement
2. Fistula formation
3. Involvement of the tracheal or bronchial tree
4. Vena cava or azygos vein obstruction
5. Malignant effusion: mediastinal widening itself is not evidence of extraesophageal spread.

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed
M0  No (known) distant metastasis*
M1  Distant metastasis present
Specify __________________________

*In the cervical esophagus, any lymph node involvement other than that of cervical or supraclavicular lymph nodes is considered distant metastasis. For the thoracic esophagus any cervical, supraclavicular, scalene, or abdominal lymph nodes are considered distant metastasis.

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Cervical esophagus: The regional lymph nodes in the cervical esophagus are the cervical and supraclavicular nodes

N0  No clinically palpable nodes
N1  Movable, unilateral, palpable nodes
N2  Movable, bilateral, palpable nodes
N3  Fixed nodes

Thoracic esophagus:
NX (clinical evaluation)
Regional lymph nodes for the upper, midthoracic, and lower thoracic esophagus that are not ordinarily accessible for clinical evaluation

N0 (surgical evaluation)
  No positive nodes
N1 (surgical evaluation)
  Positive nodes

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify __________________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

The various TNM classifications can be gathered together to represent three major groups of patients: (1) those patients with a fairly good prognosis when dealt with by present-day therapeutic methods, (2) those whose course is fulminating and rapidly fatal, and (3) those whose course lies between, including those who have little or no chance of cure but who may often live for varying periods.
6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 Approximately 98% of esophageal cancers are squamous cell carcinomas and approximately 2% are adenocarcinomas. Rarely do various sarcomas and melanomas occur.

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)
   G1 Well-differentiated
   G2 Moderately well-differentiated
   G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

   Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

7.0 PERFORMANCE STATUS OF HOST (H)

7.1 Several systems for recording a patient's activity and symptoms are in use and are more or less equivalent as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AJC</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal Activity</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.0 REFERENCES


DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ____________________________ Institutional Identification
Address __________________________ Hospital or Clinic __________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number _______________ Address __________________________
Age _______ Sex _______ Race _______

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer _______________ Histologic Cell Type __________________________
Grade __________________________
Time of Classification* cTNM _______ sTNM _______ pTNM _______ rTNM _______ aTNM _______
Date of Classification __________________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — ESOPHAGUS

Distance from Incisors
Cervical < 18 cm
Upper thoracic 18-30 cm
Lower thoracic > 30 cm

Histology
SCE _______ Other _______
Length of tumor, _______ cm

Encircles esophagus
 evidence of obstruction
Extraesophageal extension
 Nerve involvement
 Tracheobronchial tree
 Caval obstruction
 Pleural effusion
 Mediastinal widening (not necessarily evidence of extraesophageal spread)

Lymph Nodes
Palpable
Bilateral
Fixed
Number __________________________
Size of largest node _______ cm²

Location
Cervical
Supraclavicular
Intrathoracic
Abdominal

Metastasis
Distant lymph nodes
Lung
Bone
Liver
Other

Classification
T _______ N _______ M _______

Stage __________________________

Residual Tumor

Host — Performance Status (H)
H Scale used: AJC _______ Zubrod _______ Karnofsky _______

*CTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
TNM CLASSIFICATION
Primary Tumor (T) (for all three segments of the esophagus)
T0 No demonstrable tumor in the esophagus
T1 A tumor <5 cm in esophageal length with no obstruction*, no circumferential involvement, and no extraesophageal spread†
T2 A tumor >5 cm in esophageal length with no extraesophageal spread or a tumor of any size which obstructs* or has circumferential involvement and with no extraesophageal spread
T3 Any tumor with extraesophageal spread†
*Roentgenographic evidence of significant impediment to the passage of liquid contrast material past the tumor or endoscopic evidence of esophageal obstruction
†Extension of cancer outside the esophagus is seen by clinical, roentgenographic, or endoscopic evidence of:
1. Recurrent laryngeal, phrenic, or sympathetic nerve involvement
2. Fistula formation
3. Involvement of the tracheal or bronchial tree
4. Vena cava or azygos vein obstruction
5. Malignant effusion: mediastinal widening itself is not evidence of extraesophageal spread
Nodal Involvement (N)
Cervical esophagus: the regional lymph nodes in the cervical esophagus are the cervical and supraclavicular nodes
N0 No clinically palpable nodes
N1 Movable, unilateral, palpable nodes
N2 Movable, bilateral, palpable nodes
N3 Fixed nodes
Thoracic esophagus:
NX (clinical evaluation) Regional lymph nodes for the upper, midthoracic, and lower thoracic esophagus that are not ordinarily accessible for clinical evaluation
N0 (surgical evaluation) No positive nodes
N1 (surgical evaluation) Positive nodes
Distant Metastasis (M)
M0 No (known) distant metastasis*
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify
Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL Lymph Nodes - LYM Skin - SKI
Osseous - OSS Bone Marrow - MAR Eye - EYE
Hepatic - HEP Pleura - PLE Other - OTH
Brain - BRA
*For the cervical esophagus, any lymph node involvement other than that of cervical or supraclavicular lymph nodes, is considered distant metastasis. For the thoracic esophagus, any cervical, supraclavicular, scalene, or abdominal lymph node is considered distant metastasis.

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Squamous cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma. Rarely do sarcomas and melanomas occur
GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4
STAGE GROUPING
Stage I T1N0M0 Carcinoma in situ
T1 N0 M0 Tumor in any region of the esophagus that involves <5 cm of esophageal length, produces no obstruction, has no extraesophageal spread, does not involve the entire circumference, and shows no regional lymph node metastases or remote metastases
Stage II A tumor of any size with no extraesophageal spread and with no distant metastases
Cervical esophagus:
T1 N1 M0
T1 N2 M0 Any tumor with palpable, movable, regional nodes
T2 N1 M0
T2 N2 M0
T2 N0 M0 A tumor > 5 cm in length with negative nodes
Thoracic esophagus:
T2 NX M0 Lymph nodes cannot be assessed (clinical-diagnostic evaluation)
T2 N0 M0 No lymph node involvement (postsurgical treatment-pathologic evaluation) >5 cm in length, or a tumor of any size with obstruction or circumferential involvement
Stage III Any esophageal cancer at any level with:
Any T3
Any N3
Any N1 (cervical) Any intrathoracic esophageal carcinoma including either upper and midthoracic region or lower thoracic region
Any M1 with any positive findings in regional lymph nodes
Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host
H0 Normal activity
H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self
H2 Ambulatory but more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance
H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed
H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization

ECOG/ Zubrod scale Karnofsky scale (%)
0 90-100
1 70-80
2 50-60
3 30-40
4 10-20

70
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE STOMACH

The stage classification for carcinoma of the stomach as an aid in selecting treatment is based on the clinical extent of the disease as demonstrated by clinical examination and by roentgenographic and endoscopic studies.* A staging classification for end-results reporting is based on the extent of disease at the time of surgical exploration of the abdomen, histopathologic study of the excised surgical specimen, or clinical examination (in advanced disease).

Only those cases that have histologically proven primary carcinoma or histologically proven metastasis with clinical evidence of a primary tumor in the stomach are to be included in this classification.

The prognosis of carcinoma of the stomach depends on the degree of penetration of the stomach wall by the primary lesion. Size or location of the primary tumor is of less significance. The histologic classification of carcinoma of the stomach is not helpful in assessing prognosis.

The clinical classification defines the extent of disease in terms of three components: (1) the primary tumor, designated by the letter T and expressed in terms of the degree of penetration by the cancer through the stomach wall; (2) the regional lymph nodes, designated by the letter N, which are the intra-abdominal subdiaphragmastic nodes; and (3) distant metastasis, designated by the letter M.

For clinical-diagnostic classification, the primary tumor will always be designated by the letter cT and for postsurgical treatment-pathologic classification, by the letters pT. The description of the primary lesion is similar for the clinical-diagnostic and postsurgical treatment-pathologic classifications.

*A conference was held in June 1975 between representatives of the AJC Task Force and the Japanese TNM Committee to consider staging of cancer of the stomach. General agreement was reached on most areas. Variances do exist in that the Japanese TNM members felt that the area of the stomach in which the tumor is located is a factor in staging. Also, it was their feeling that the capabilities of endoscopic diagnosis were refined to the point where the extent of the primary tumor could be determined clinically. At the present time neither of these factors are included in the AJC recommendations.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The stomach may be divided into three regions: upper third, middle third, and lower third. In order to delimit these regions, the lesser and greater curves of the stomach are divided into three equidistant points that are then joined — the upper third being the cardiac area and fundus, the middle third the body, and the lower third the antrum.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The major lymphatic collecting trunks are parallel with the left gastric artery, the splenic artery, and the hepatic artery. The major first station nodes are the lesser curvature, left gastropancreatic, juxtacardiac, gastroduodenal, gastropyloric, suprapyloric, pancreatoduodenal, celiac, splenic, and hepatic lymph nodes. The second station nodes include the paraaortic nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to liver, bone, supraclavicular lymph nodes, and lung are common, but widespread visceral involvement occurs.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The clinical assessment of the primary tumor includes medical history, physical examination, routine and special roentgenograms (e.g., fluoroscopy, barium studies), endoscopy, laparoscopy, echography, computerized tomography, and biopsy. As the newer techniques are improved and gain wider use, clinical staging can be more reliable.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Procedures such as exploratory laparotomy and palpation of the primary tumor site, regional lymph nodes, and liver, including biopsy, are used.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Partially and completely resected stomach specimens and regional nodes allow for the use of this staging designation.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Available procedures, as noted above, should be utilized
to firmly establish histopathologic evidence of recurrence and its extent, including local recurrence, regional node involvement, and distant metastasis.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

The principal factor is the degree of penetration of the stomach wall by the carcinoma.

TX Degree of penetration of stomach wall not determined
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Tumor limited to mucosa or mucosa and submucosa regardless of its extent (or location)
T2 Tumor involves the mucosa, the submucosa (including the muscularis propria), and extends to or into the serosa but does not penetrate through the serosa
T3 Tumor penetrates through the serosa without invading contiguous structures
T4 Tumor penetrates through the serosa and invades contiguous structures

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

The regional lymph nodes are the intra-abdominal subdiaphragmatic nodes.

NX Metastases to intra-abdominal lymph nodes not determined (i.e., laparotomy not done)
N0 No metastases to regional lymph nodes
N1 Involvement of perigastric lymph nodes within 3 cm of the primary tumor along the lesser or greater curvature
N2 Involvement of the regional lymph nodes farther than 3 cm from the primary tumor, which are removed or removable at operation, including those located along the left gastric, splenic, celiac, and common hepatic arteries

N3 Involvement of other intra-abdominal lymph nodes such as the para-aortic, hepatoduodenal, retropancreatic, and mesenteric nodes

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify ____________________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Peritoneal - PER
Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
(above diaphragm or nonabdominal)
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

The TNM classification should be recorded for each patient.

A. Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Stage Grouping

Stage I

pT1, N0, M0
Tumor confined to the mucosa and submucosa
Stage IV

pT4, N0-3, M0
pT1-3, N3, M0
Tumor involving the stomach wall with invasion of contiguous structures (pT4) and any regional nodal involvement not resectable for cure

or

M1 with any T and any N

Any carcinoma of the stomach with distant metastasis (M1), including those with TX or NX

B. Clinical Stage Grouping

At present, it is not feasible to establish a satisfactory clinical stage grouping according to the clinical descriptions of the primary tumor without reliable knowledge of regional node involvement. However, a proposed clinical stage grouping will provide a basis for the future, after development of improved diagnostic techniques.

5.1 SUMMARY: STAGE GROUPING OF CARCINOMA OF THE STOMACH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Clinical-Diagnostic Staging</th>
<th>Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cT1, N0, M0</td>
<td>pT1, N0, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>cT1, N0, M0*</td>
<td>pT2, N0, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cT3, N0, M0</td>
<td>pT3, N0, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>cTX-3, N1-3+ , M0</td>
<td>pT1-3, N1, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cTX-3, N1-3+ , M0</td>
<td>pT1-3, N2, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(resected for cure)</td>
<td>pT1-3, N3, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(resected for cure)</td>
<td>pT4, N0-3, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>cTX-4, N3-4+ , M0</td>
<td>pT1-3, N3, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(probably not resectable)</td>
<td>pT4, N0-3, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(not resectable)</td>
<td>pT4, N0-3, M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cTX-4, NX-3, M0</td>
<td>pT1-4 or pTX, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N0-3 or NX, M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not applicable — at present there is no reliable clinical method of determining the extent of T2 lesions.

†Established by clinical criteria (e.g., echogram, computerized tomography).
6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY
The predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma, most often poorly differentiated and infrequently well-differentiated.

6.1 Tumor Grade (G)
G1 Well-differentiated
G2 Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

7.0 REFERENCE
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ____________________________
Address __________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number ____________
Age ____ Sex ____ Race ____

Institutional Identification
Hospital or Clinic _______________________
Address __________________________

ONCOLOGY RECORD
Anatomic Site of Cancer ________________
Histologic Cell Type __________________
Grade ________________________________

Time of Classification* cTNM ______ sTNM ______ pTNM ______ rTNM ______ aTNM ______
Date of Classification __________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION
— STOMACH

Primary Tumor
Site ____________________________
Size ____________________________
Depth of penetration ______ Layers involved ______

Method(s) of Determination __________________

Nodes
Negative __________________________
Positive __________________________
Groups involved ____________________

Metastasis
Negative _______ Positive ______
Sites ____________________________
Methods of determination ______

Classification
T ______ N ______ M ______

Stage ____________________________
Residual Tumor R ______

Host — Performance Status (H)
H _______ Scale used: AJC _______ Zubrod _______ Karnofsky _______

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaualve; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic;
rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Degree of penetration of stomach wall not determined
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Tumor limited to mucosa and submucosa regardless of its extent or location
T2 Tumor involves the mucosa, the submucosa (including the muscularis propria), and extends to or into the serosa, but does not penetrate through the serosa
T3 Tumor penetrates through the serosa without invading contiguous structures
T4 Tumor penetrates through the serosa and invades the contiguous structures

Nodal Involvement (N)
NX Metastases to intra-abdominal lymph nodes not determined (e.g., laparotomy not done)
N0 No metastases to regional lymph nodes
N1 Involvement of perigastric lymph nodes within 3 cm of the primary tumor along the lesser or greater curvature
N2 Involvement of the regional lymph nodes, more than 3 cm from the primary tumor, which are removable at operation, including those located along the left gastric, splenic, celiac, and common hepatic arteries
N3 Involvement of other intra-abdominal lymph nodes which are not removable to operation, such as the para-aortic, hepatoduodenal, retroperitoneal, and mesenteric nodes

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify sites according to the following notations:
Peritoneal - PER
Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH
(above diaphragm or nonabdominal)

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma

GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4.

STAGE GROUPING

Stage Clinical-Diagnostic Staging Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging
I ctT1, N0, M0 pT1, N0, M0
II ctT1, N0, M0* pT2, N0, M0
ctT3, N0, M0 pT3, N0, M0
III ctTX-3, N1-3†, M0 pT1-3, N1, M0
pT1-3, N2, M0
pT1-3, N3, M0
(resected for cure)
IV ctT4, NX-3†, M0 pT1-3, N3, M0
(probably not resectable)
pT4, N0-3, M0
(pT1-4 or pTX, or
not resectable)
cT4, NX-3, M1
N0-3 or NX, M1

*Not applicable — at present there is no reliable clinical method of determining the extent of T2 lesions.
†Established by clinical criteria (e.g., echogram, computerized tomography).

Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify __________

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

HO Normal activity
H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self
H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance
H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed
H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization

ECOG/ Karnofsky
Zubrod scale scale (%)
0 90-100
1 70-80
2 50-60
3 30-40
4 10-20

76
STAGING OF CANCER
OF THE COLON AND RECTUM

In retrospective studies, inadequacies of the clinical data prohibited the development of meaningful clinical and surgical-evaluative classifications (sTNM) for either site individually. Generally, however, the data were sufficiently reliable and consistent when based on postsurgical treatment information to permit development of a staging system for those cases in which histopathologic examination of therapeutically resected specimens was done (pTNM). In both sites, analysis of the postsurgical treatment data suggested that prognosis was related to the depth of penetration of the tumor, regional lymph node involvement, presence or absence of distant metastases, and complications, such as the presence of fistula. A comparison of survival data for the colon with that of the rectum, based on penetration (pT), lymph node status (N), and distant metastases (M), showed such a similarity as to suggest the practicality of developing from the retrospective data one set of pTNM categories for postsurgical treatment evaluation and one set of stage grouping definitions. However, in any analysis of postsurgical treatment evaluation and stage groupings, the two sites should be kept separate.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The large intestine (or colon) extends from the terminal ileum to the anal canal, although for simplicity it may be divided into three subdivisions exclusive of the rectum: right, middle, and left. Still more simply, the large intestine may be divided into the intraperitoneal colon and the rectum (distal 10 cm). All intraperitoneal colonic lesions are treated similarly. The rectal lesions are handled quite differently; some have a somewhat worse prognosis. However, the conventional, more minute subdivisions will be described briefly inasmuch as they may be of relevance in prospective studies concerned with carcinogenesis, classification, staging, and reporting of cancer of the colorectum.

The cecum is a large pouch that constitutes the proximal segment of the large intestine, measures about 6 by 9 cm, and is invested completely by the peritoneum. The vermiform appendix arises from the medial and posterior aspect of the cecum below the ileocecal junction. The appendix, therefore, may lie in any axis of a circle, the center of the circle being represented by the cecal attachment. The ascending colon is 15-20 cm long and is ordinarily retroperitoneal.

Lying at the undersurface of the right lobe of the liver and close to the duodenum and the right kidney, the hepatic flexure presents a difficult problem of differential diagnosis, and cancer at this site may invade these organs relatively early.

The transverse colon lies in a more anterior position than do other portions of the colon, so tumors here should be more readily palpable. It is supported by the transverse mesocolon, which in turn is attached to the pancreas. Anteriorly, its serosa is contiguous with the gastrocolic ligament, which is attached to the stomach.

The splenic flexure lies at a higher level and is more fixed than the hepatic flexure; it is intimately related to the spleen, the tail of the pancreas, and the left kidney. The descending colon, a 15 cm long, is only partially invested in peritoneum, the posterior portion being in a retroperitoneal position.

The sigmoid loop extends from the medial border on the left psoas major muscle to the beginning of the rectum. It is suspended by its mesocolon (the sigmoid mesocolon), which is variable in length. When the mesocolon is excessively long, the resulting “redundant” sigmoid may come to lie in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen.

The rectum, 12 cm long, extends from a point opposite the third sacral vertebra down to the apex of the prostate in the male and to the apex of the perineal body in the female, that is, to a point 4 cm anterior to the tip of the coccyx. (Arbitrarily, it may be defined as the distal 10 cm of the large intestine, as measured by preoperative sigmoidos-
copy from the anal verge.) From the anal mucocutaneous junction, it extends approximately 10 to 12 cm. The rectosigmoid area is considered as being 10 to 15 cm from the anal mucocutaneous junction. In this retrospective study, all rectosigmoid cases have been grouped with those of the rectum. The rectum has no epiploic appendages, no haustations, and no taeniae. It is covered by peritoneum in front and on both sides in its upper third and on the anterior wall only in its middle third; there is no peritoneal covering in the lower third. In the lower rectum, the mucosa is thrown into longitudinal folds known as the rectal columns or the columns of Morgani. Between them, just above the white line of Hilton, are the anal pits or sinuses.

About 4 cm long, the anal canal courses downward and backward from the apex of the prostate or the perineal body. The anocutaneous line, or white line of Hilton, at the base of the rectal columns marks the site of the original anal membrane that separated the entodermal gut from the ectodermal proctoderm.

1.2 Nodal Stations: Whenever possible, the status of the principal lymph nodes at the base of the mesocolon should be recorded, namely those proximal to the origins of the ileocolic, right colic, middle colic, and inferior mesenteric arteries. As will be noted in the definitions under N and for stage, involvement of the principal (para-aortic) lymph nodes, in contrast to involvement of intervening nodes, constitutes distant metastasis. Intervening, or regional, nodes are: intermediate (along the course of the major vessels supplying the colon), paracolic (following the vascular arcades of Drummond’s marginal artery), and epicolic (in close proximity to the colon, being found along the mesocolic border of the colon and often in the epiploic appendages).

Although the flow of lymph usually traverses each group of nodes from the epiploic to the principal nodes, occasionally it flows directly to the intermediate or even to the principal nodes, bypassing those that intervene. (Increasing use of the “no-touch” isolation technique in resecting colonic lesions has been thought by some to minimize the degree to which lymph node involvement, N, can be assessed as a component of the surgical-evaluative classification. However, nodes can be evaluated after the vascular supply has been ligated, even with the “no-touch” technique.)

Listed below are the regional lymph nodes for each colorectal segment:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Segment</th>
<th>Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cecum</td>
<td>Anterior cecal; posterior cecal; ileocolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascending colon</td>
<td>Ileocolic; right colic; middle colic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic flexure</td>
<td>Right colic; middle colic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse colon</td>
<td>Middle colic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenic flexure Descending colon</td>
<td>Left colic; inferior mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sigmoid colon</td>
<td>Perirectal; left colic; sigmoid mesenteric; inferior mesenteric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectosigmoid</td>
<td>Perirectal; left colic; sigmoid mesenteric; inferior mesenteric; internal iliac (hypogastric); lateral sacral (common iliac; sacral promontory (Gerota)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Lymph nodes between origins of the inferior and superior mesenteric arteries are nonresectable, for example, superior mesenteric lymph nodes. Therefore, although regional in the classic anatomic sense, they are designated “distant” for purposes of clinical stage classification. (Colonic resections are distal to the superior mesenteric artery and its contiguous nodes.) Similarly, lymph flow from the lower rectum may be to regional lymph nodes (i.e., internal iliac [hypogastric], common iliac, lateral sacral, or sacral promontory), which are not resected at the time of an abdominoperineal resection but may be resected as a separate procedure.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Clinical assessment includes medical history, physical examination, routine and special roentgenograms (including barium
enema and fluoroscopy), sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy (with biopsy of lesions above the level of the sigmoid colon), fiberoptics (with biopsy when possible), cytologic examination of colon washings, laboratory examinations (e.g., occult blood determination in the stool), chorionic embryonic antigen (CEA) assay, and special examinations used to demonstrate the presence of extracolonic metastasis (e.g., chest films, blood counts, liver chemistries).

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: This should include all the data that would be obtained for clinical classification, as well as the information obtained at the time of exploratory laparotomy, including biopsy, but not including information obtained by complete histopathologic examination of a therapeutically resected specimen.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: This classification describes the known extent of the colorectal carcinoma after complete examination of the resected specimen. Important determinants of survival in the pTNM classification are the depth of tumor penetration, involvement of regional lymph nodes, and presence of distant metastasis. Other factors associated with survival are local intravasal invasion (venous or lymphatic), grade, and presence or absence of fistula.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

The definitions of TNM categories for carcinoma of the colon and rectum follow. Each case must be assigned the highest category of T, N, and M that describes the full extent of disease in that case.

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX  Depth of penetration not specified
T0  No clinically demonstrable tumor
TIS Carcinoma in situ (no penetration of lamina propria)
T1  Clinically benign lesion or lesion confined to the mucosa or submucosa
T2  Involvement of muscular wall or serosa, no extension beyond
T3  Involvement of all layers of colon or rectum with extension to immediately adjacent structures or organs or both, with no fistula present
T4  Fistula present along with any of the above degrees of tumor penetration
T5  Tumor has spread by direct extension beyond the immediately adjacent organs or tissues

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

NX  Nodes not assessed or involvement not recorded
N0  Nodes not believed to be involved
N1  Regional nodes involved (distal to inferior mesenteric artery)

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed
M0  No (known) distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis present (including extra-abdominal nodes; intra-abdominal nodes proximal to mesocolon and inferior mesenteric artery [see N1]; peritoneal implants, liver, lungs, and bones)
Specify _______________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
 Pleura - PLE
 Skin - SKI
 Eye - EYE
 Other - OTH

Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology (p) is proven.
4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
  Specify ____________________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage 0
TIS N0 M0
Carcinoma in situ as demonstrated by histologic examination of tissue (biopsy or other)

Stage I
Stage IA
T0,1 N0 M0
T0,1 NX M0
Tumor confined to mucosa or submucosa with no demonstrable metastasis to regional lymph nodes and no evidence of distant metastasis

Stage IB
T2 N0 M0
T2 NX M0
Tumor involves muscularis but has not extended beyond serosa with no demonstrable metastasis to regional lymph nodes and no evidence of distant metastasis

Stage II
T3-5 N0 M0
T3-5 NX M0
A tumor that has extended beyond the bowel wall or serosa with no demonstrable metastasis to regional lymph nodes and no evidence of distant metastasis

Stage III
Any T N1 M0
Any degree of penetration of bowel or rectal wall by tumor with metastasis to regional lymph nodes but no evidence of distant metastasis

Stage IV
Any T Any N M1
Any degree of penetration of bowel or rectal wall by tumor with or without metastasis to regional lymph nodes and with evidence of distant metastasis

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma; pathologic diagnosis is required to utilize this classification. Tumor grading is recommended. Reference to WHO nomenclature is advised.

6.2 Other determinants of probable importance to be evaluated in prospective studies of postsurgical treatment assessment are tumor margin circumscriptio, histopathologic differentiation (e.g., nuclear grade, growth pattern, and mucin production), and host-cellular reaction (lymphocyte and plasma cell infiltration in and about the tumor as well as in contiguous tissues). It is essential that in each case the specific histologic type and the presence or absence of intravascular permeation (lymphatic, venous, or both) be routinely recorded.

6.3 Tumor Grade (G)
G1  Well-differentiated
G2  Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

PATIENT IDENTIFICATION
Name ____________________________ Hospital or Clinic ____________________
Address __________________________ Address ____________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number __________ Race __________
Age ________ Sex ________

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer ____________ Histologic Cell Type ____________________
Grade ____________________________
Time of Classification* cTNM ______ sTNM ______ pTNM ______ rTNM ______ aTNM ______
Date of Classification ____________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — COLORECTAL NEOPLASMS

History
Symptoms ___________________________________________________________
Duration __________________________________________________________

Physical Examination
Rectal ____________________________ Colonoscopy (fiberoptics) _______
Abdominal palpation ________ Peritoneoscopy ________
Proctosigmoidoscopy ________

Roentgenographic Studies
Type ____________________________ Findings ____________________________
Site or Level ______________________
Size ________ cm

Gross Characteristics
Depth of Penetration of Bowel Wall ____________________________

Blood Vessel Invasion__________
Adjacent Tissues Involved ____________________________
Adjacent ________ Distant ________

Complications Fistula ________ Other ____________________________

Other Neoplasms________________________

Laboratory Studies
Hb ________ Cytology (colon washings) ________
CEA (washings) ________ ng Cytology (other) ________
CEA (serum) ________ ng Other ____________________________

Nodal Involvement
Cannot assess ________
None ________
Regional ________ Specify ____________________________
Distant ________ Number ________ Proved ________

Metastasis
None ________ Yes ________ Specify ____________________________
Proved ________

Classification
T ________ N ________ M ________

Stage ____________
Residual Tumor ____________

Host — Performance Status (H)
H_______ Scale used: AJC ________ Zubrod ________ Karnofsky ______

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Depth of penetration not specified
T0 No clinically demonstrable tumor
TIS Carcinoma in situ
T1 Clinically benign lesion or lesion confined to the mucosa or submucosa
T2 Involvement of muscular wall or serosa, no extension beyond
T3 Involvement of all layers of colon or rectum with extension to immediately
adjacent structures or organs or both, with no fistula present
T4 Fistula present along with any of the above degrees of tumor penetration
T5 Tumor has spread by direct extension beyond the immediately adjacent
organs or tissues

Nodal Involvement (N)
NX Nodes not assessed or involvement not recorded
N0 Nodes not believed to be involved
N1 Regional nodes involved (distal to inferior mesenteric artery)

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL Lymph Nodes - LYM Skin - SKI
Osseous - OSS Hepatic - HEP Pleura - PLE
Other - OTH
Brain - BRA

HISTOPATHOLOGY
The predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma

GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

STAGE GROUPING

Stage 0
TIS N0 M0
Carcinoma in situ as demonstrated by histologic examination of tissue (biopsy or other)

Stage I
Stage IA
T0.1 N0 M0
T0.1 NX M0
Tumor confined to mucosa or submucosa with no demonstrable metastasis to regional lymph nodes and
no evidence of distant metastasis
Stage IB
T2 N0 M0
T2 NX M0
Tumor involves muscularis but has not extended beyond serosa with no demonstrable metastasis to
regional lymph nodes and no evidence of distant metastasis

Stage II
T3-5 N0 M0
T3-5 NX M0
A tumor that has extended beyond the bowel wall or serosa with no demonstrable metastasis to regional
lymph nodes and no evidence of distant metastasis

Stage III
Any T N1 M0
Any degree of penetration of bowel or rectal wall by tumor with metastasis to regional lymph nodes but no
evidence of distant metastasis
Stage IV

Any T Any N M1
Any degree of penetration of bowel or rectal wall by tumor with or without metastasis to regional lymph nodes and with evidence of distant metastasis

Residual Tumor (R)
R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify __________________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host</th>
<th>ECOG/ Karnofsky</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zubrod scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H0 Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE PANCREAS

Collecting objective data to classify and stage cancer of the exocrine pancreas is still in progress. A protocol exists and can be obtained from the AJC.* The following classification is recommended to be field tested prospectively and evaluated for future refinement.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The pancreas is a long lobulated structure which lies transversely in the posterior abdomen located retroperitoneally in the concavity of the duodenum on its right end and touching the spleen on its left end. The shape of the pancreas may be compared to the letter "J" placed sideways. It is divisible into a head with an uncinate process, a neck, a body, and a tail.

1.2 Nodal Stations: There is a rich lymphatic network surrounding the pancreas with a left splenic and superior and inferior right side truncal drainage. The first station nodes include celiac, splenic, suprapancreatic, left gastropancreatic, hepatic artery, inferior pancreatic, juxta-aorta, anterior pancreatic duodenal, and posterior pancreatic duodenal. Juxtaregional nodes include the inferior portion of the para-aortic nodal drainage and mediastinal and mesenteric nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread occurs mainly to liver and lungs, with a lesser degree of involvement of bones and brain and other anatomic sites.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The pancreas is an inaccessible site to physical examination, and laboratory and radiographic procedures are available but are largely diagnostic and investigative. They include hypotonic duodenography, retroperitoneal pneumotomography, computerized axial tomography, pharmacodynamic angiography, ultrasonic examination with aspiration biopsy of the pancreas, radioisotopic pancreatic scans, and endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. Routine procedures for metastases such as chest film, SMA-12, chorionic embryonic antigen (CEA) assay, and liver scans are recommended.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Laparotomy and surgical exploration of the pancreas is a more accurate means of assessing the true anatomic extent of the tumor. Biopsies of the periphery of the tumor and associated nodes fit into this category.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Complete resection of pancreas and its tumor and associated nodes with pathologic analysis is assigned to the pathologic classification.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Biopsy is essential to establish recurrence of the disease, and complete workup of metastatic disease in other compartments is recommended.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

| T0 | Minimum requirements cannot be met |
| T1 | Tumor limited to pancreas, greatest diameter 0 to 2 cm |
| T2 | Tumor limited to pancreas, greatest diameter 2 to 6 cm |
| T3 | Tumor greater than 6 cm in greatest diameter |
| T4 | Tumor invading extrapancreatic contiguous structures by direct extension |

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

| N0 | No metastatic nodes |
| N1 | One regional group involved at laparotomy |

*The American Joint Committee Office, 55 East Erie Street, Chicago, IL 60611
N2 Two or more regional groups involved at laparotomy
N3 Clinical evidence of regional node involvement (no laparotomy)
N4 Involvement of juxta regional nodes

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
   Specify __________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology is proven.

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
   Specify __________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING
There is no stage grouping recommended at this time.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma
   Adenocarcinoma
   Papillary carcinoma
   Pseudomucinous cystadenocarcinoma
   Islet cell carcinoma

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)
G1 Well-differentiated
G2 Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name __________________________
Address __________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number ______
Age _____ Sex _____ Race _____

Institutional Identification
Hospital or Clinic __________________________
Address __________________________

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer __________________________
Histologic Cell Type __________________________
Grade __________________________

Time of Classification* cTNM ____ sTNM ____ pTNM ____ rTNM ____ aTNM ____
Date of Classification __________________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — PANCREAS

History
Pain __________________
Jaundice __________________
Weight loss __________________
Other __________________

Primary tumor
Location in Pancreas
Head  □
Body  □
Tail  □

Size (largest diameter) ______

Characteristics of Tumor
Single or multiple ______
Mobile ______
Fixed ______
Hard ______
Soft ______
Cystic ______

Nodes Involved
Yes ______ No ______
Specify __________________

Regional Extension
To adjacent organs
Yes ______ No ______
Specify __________________
To other tissues
Yes ______ No ______
Specify __________________

Distant Spread
Yes ______ No ______
Specify __________________

Classification
T _____ N _____ M _____

Stage
No stage grouping recommended

Residual Tumor
R __________________

Host — Performance Status (H)
H ________ Scale used: AJC ________ Zubrod ________ Karnofsky ________
* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, re-treatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Minimum requirements cannot be met
T1 Limited to pancreas, less than 2.0 cm in diameter
T2 Limited to pancreas, 2 to 6 cm in diameter
T3 Over 6 cm in diameter
T4 Extrapancreatic direct extension to contiguous structures

Nodal Involvement (N)
NX Minimum requirements cannot be met
N0 No metastatic nodes
N1 One regional group involved at laparotomy
N2 Two or more regional groups involved at laparotomy
N3 Clinical evidence of regional node involvement (no laparotomy)
N4 Involvement of juxta-regional nodes

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify _______________________
Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL Bone Marrow - MAR
Osseous - OSS Pleura - PLE
Hepatic - HEP Skin - SKI
Brain - BRA Eye - EYE
Lymph Nodes - LYM Other - OTH

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Adenocarcinoma, papillary carcinoma, pseudomucinous cystadenocarcinoma, and islet cell carcinoma

GRADE

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended at present

Residual Tumor (R)

R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify _______________________

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

ECOG/ Karnofsky
Zubrod scale scale (%)

H0 Normal activity 0 90-100
H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self 1 70-80
H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance 2 50-60
H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed 3 30-40
H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization 4 10-20
STAGING OF CANCER AT GYNECOLOGIC SITES
CEVIX UTERI, CORPUS UTERI, OVARY, VAGINA, and VULVA

In 1976 the AJC adopted the classification of the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO), which is the format used in the “Annual Report on the Results of Treatment in Carcinoma of the Uterus, Vagina and Ovary.” Published every 3 years, this report has utilized the FIGO classification with periodic modifications since 1937. Numerous institutions throughout the world contribute their statistics for inclusion in this voluntary collaborative presentation of data.

Since 1966 the TNM Committee of the International Union Against Cancer (UICC) has promulgated its recommendations for the classification of gynecologic tumors. From time to time, often in concert with representatives of FIGO, these recommendations also have been modified. The most recent revision in 1976 has brought the TNM and FIGO definitions into full conformity with each other. At this time, therefore, all systems are substantially in full agreement both as to categories and details.

Anatomy and Classification by Sites of Malignant Tumors of the Female Pelvis

CEVIX UTERI

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The cervix is the lower third of the uterus. It is roughly cylindrical in shape, projects through the upper, anterior vaginal wall and communicates with the vagina through an orifice called the external os. Cancer of the cervix may originate on the vaginal surface or in the canal.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The cervix is drained by preureteral, postureteral, and uterosacral routes into the following first station nodes: parametrical, hypogastric (obturator), external iliac, presacral, and common iliac. Para-aortic nodes are second station and juxtaregional.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: The most common sites of distant spread include the lungs and skeleton.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Careful clinical examination should be performed in all cases, preferably by an experienced examiner and with anesthesia. The clinical staging must not be changed because of subsequent findings. When there is doubt as to which stage a particular cancer should be allocated, the earlier stage is mandatory. The following examinations are permitted: palpation, inspection, colposcopy, endocervical curettage, hysteroscopy, cystoscopy, proctoscopy, intravenous urography, and x-ray examination of the lungs and skeleton. Suspected bladder or rectal involvement should be confirmed by biopsy and histologic evidence. Optional examinations include: lymphangiography, arteriography, venography, laparoscopy, and others. Because these are not yet generally available and because also the interpretation of results is variable, the findings of optional studies should not be the basis for changing the clinical staging.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Surgical evaluation is applicable only after laparotomy and examination of tumor and nodes. Conization or amputation of the cervix is regarded as a clinical examination. Invasive cancers so identified are to be included in the reports (see 4.0).

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: In cases treated by surgical procedures, the pathologist’s findings in the removed tissues can be the basis for extremely accurate statements on the extent of disease. These findings should not be allowed to change the clinical staging but should be recorded in the manner described for the pathologic staging of disease. The pTNM nomenclature is appropriate for this purpose. Infrequently, it happens that hysterectomy is carried out in the presence of unsuspected extensive invasive cervical carcinoma. Such cases cannot be clinically staged or included in therapeutic statistics, but it is desirable that they be reported separately. Only if the rules for clinical staging are strictly observed will it be possible to present comparable re-
results between clinics and by differing modes of therapy.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Complete examination using the procedures cited in 2.1, including a search for distant metastases, is recommended in cases known or suspected to have recurrence. Biopsy and histologic confirmation are particularly desirable when induration and fibrosis from previously treated disease are present.

3.0 STAGING CLASSIFICATION
FIGO Nomenclature

Stage 0
Carcinoma in situ, intraepithelial carcinoma

Stage I
The carcinoma is strictly confined to the cervix (extension to the corpus should be disregarded)

Stage IA Microinvasive carcinoma (early stromal invasion)

Stage IB All other cases of stage I; occult cancer should be marked "occ"

Stage II
The carcinoma extends beyond the cervix but has not extended to the pelvic wall. The carcinoma involves the vagina, but not as far as the lower third

Stage IIA No obvious parametrial involvement

Stage IIB Obvious parametrial involvement

Stage III
The carcinoma has extended to the pelvic wall. On rectal examination, there is no cancer-free space between the tumor and the pelvic wall. The tumor involves the lower third of the vagina. All cases with a hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney are included, unless they are known to be due to other cause

Stage IIIA No extension to the pelvic wall

Stage IIIB Extension to the pelvic wall and/or hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney

Stage IV
The carcinoma has extended beyond the true pelvis or has clinically involved the mucosa of the bladder or rectum. A bullous edema of such does not permit a case to be allotted to stage IV

StageIVA Spread of the growth to adjacent organs

Stage IVB Spread to distant organs

Notes About the Staging. — Stage IA (microinvasive carcinoma) represents those cases of epithelial abnormalities in which histologic evidence of early stromal invasion is unambiguous. The diagnosis is based upon microscopic examination of tissue removed by biopsy, conization, portio amputation, or removal of the uterus. Cases of early stromal invasion should thus be allotted to stage IA.

The remainder of stage I cases should be allotted to stage IB. As a rule these cases can be diagnosed by routine clinical examination.

Occult cancer is a histologically invasive cancer that cannot be diagnosed by routine clinical examination. As a rule it is diagnosed on the basis of a cone, the amputated portio, or on the removed uterus. Such cancers should be included in stage IB and should be marked "stage IB, occ."

Stage I cases can thus be indicated in the following ways:

Stage IA Carcinoma in situ with early stromal invasion diagnosed on tissue removed by biopsy, conization, portio amputation, or on the removed uterus

Stage IB Clinically invasive carcinoma confined to the cervix

Stage IB, occ
Histologically invasive carcinoma of the cervix which could not be detected at routine clinical examination but which was diagnosed on the basis of a large biopsy specimen, a cone, the amputated portio, or the removed uterus
As a rule, it is impossible to estimate clinically whether a cancer of the cervix has extended to the corpus or not. Extension to the corpus should therefore be disregarded.

A patient with a growth fixed to the pelvic wall by a short and indurated but not nodular parametrium should be allotted to stage IIb. It is impossible, at clinical examination, to decide whether a smooth and indurated parametrium is truly cancerous or only inflammatory. Therefore, the case should be placed in stage III only if the parametrium is nodular to the pelvic wall or if the growth itself extends to the pelvic wall.

The presence of hydronephrosis or nonfunctioning kidney due to stenosis of the ureter by cancer permits a case to be allotted to stage III even if, according to the other findings, the case should be allotted to stage I or stage II.

The presence of bullous edema, as such, should not permit a case to be allotted to stage IV. Ridges and furrows into the bladder wall should be interpreted as signs of submucous involvement of the bladder if they remain fixed to the growth at palpscopy (i.e., examination from the vagina or the rectum during cystoscopy). Finding malignant cells in cytologic washings from the urinary bladder requires further examination and a biopsy from the wall of the bladder.

TNM NOMENCLATURE

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)
   TIS Carcinoma in situ
   See Stage 0
   T1, 1a, 1b, 2a, 2b, 3a, 3b, 4a, 4b
   See corresponding FIGO stages

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)
   NX Not possible to assess the regional nodes
   N0 No involvement of regional nodes
   N1 Evidence of regional node involvement
   N4 Involvement of lumbo-aortic nodes

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)
   MX Not assessed
   M0 No (known) distant metastasis
   M1 Distant metastasis present
   Specify_____________________
   Specify sites according to the following notations:
   Pulmonary - PUL
   Osseous - OSS
   Hepatic - HEP
   Brain - BRA
   Lymph Nodes - LYM
   Bone Marrow - MAR
   Pleura - PLE
   Skin - SKI
   Eye - EYE
   Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
   R0 No residual tumor
   R1 Microscopic residual tumor
   R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
   Specify______________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING (Correlation of AJC, TNM, and FIGO Nomenclatures)

   Stage 0 TIS
   Stage I A T1a NX M0
   IB T1b NX M0
   Stage II A T2a NX M0
   IB T2b NX M0
   Stage III A T3a NX M0
   III B T3b NX M0
   Stage IVA T4a NX-0-1M0
   IV B T4b NX-0-1M0
   Any M1

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

Cases should be classified as carcinoma of the cervix if the primary growth is in the cervix. All histologic types must be included. Grading by any of several methods is encouraged but is not a basis for modifying the stage groupings. When surgery is the primary treatment, the histologic findings permit the case to have pathologic staging
as described in 2.3. In this the pTNM nomenclature is to be used. It is desirable that all tumors be microscopically verified but cases that clinically are likely to be cancer without such confirmation should be included with special attention to descriptive detail. The number should be kept to a minimum.

7.0 DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

The data collecting form that follows has been designed for use by institutions in summarizing the described information on individual cases. One should be on file in the registry for each accession. An additional checklist is recommended whenever a patient arrives at a new point for staging such as postsurgical, pathologic, etc.

The checklist includes the relevant items of information desirable at all gynecologic sites but only those need be used which apply in a given case. However, as complete a record as possible is necessary for accuracy in staging and analysis of results.

The diagrams are most helpful to those who review cases subsequently. Individuals are urged to mark in contrasting color (red) the location of tumor and satellites on the relevant diagrams at the time of initiation of the form.

CORPUS UTERI

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The upper two-thirds of the uterus above the level of the internal cervical os is called the corpus. The fallopian tubes enter at the upper lateral corners of a pear-shaped body. That portion of the muscular organ which is above a line joining the tubo-uterine orifices is often referred to as the fundus.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The major lymphatic trunks are the utero-ovarian (infundibulo-pelvic), parametrial, and presacral, which drain into the hypogastric, external iliac, common iliac, presacral, and para-aortic nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: The vagina and lung are the common metastatic sites.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Careful clinical examination should be performed, preferably by an experienced examiner and with anesthesia, before any definitive therapy. The clinical staging must not be changed because of subsequent findings. When there is doubt as to which stage a particular cancer should be allocated, the earlier stage is mandatory. The following examinations are permitted: palpation, inspection, colposcopy, endocervical curettage, hysteroscopy, cystoscopy, proctoscopy, intravenous urography, and x-ray examination of lungs and skeleton. Optional examinations include lymphangiography, arteriography, venography, and laparoscopy. Sounding and determination of the depth of the uterine cavity is an important step. Fractional curettage is essential with separation of endometrial and endocervical curettages. Careful inspection and palpation of the vagina should be carried out to assess the entire length of the vaginal tube from the apex to the urethra.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Biopsy proof is advised for suspected vaginal, bladder, or rectal invasion. Laparotomy is needed for evaluation and examination of pelvic and para-aortic lymph nodes.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Hysterectomy with or without pelvic node dissection provides the basis for surgical-pathologic staging and should not be substituted for clinical staging.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Utilization of available procedures noted above is required, particularly since induration and necrosis can occur after irradiation; scarring and nodularity to a vaginal cuff can occur after surgery. A reevaluation for distant metastases, as well as T and N compartments, is recommended.

3.0 STAGING CLASSIFICATION

FIGO Nomenclature

Stage 0
Carcinoma in situ. Histologic findings are suspicious of malignancy; cases of stage 0
should not be included in any therapeutic
statistics

Stage I
The carcinoma is confined to the corpus

Stage IA  The length of the uterine cavity is
8 cm or less

Stage IB  The length of the uterine cavity is
more than 8 cm

It is desirable that the stage I cases be sub-
grouped with regard to the histologic type of
the adenocarcinoma as follows:

G1  Highly differentiated adenomatous car-
cinoma

G2  Moderately differentiated adenomatous
carcinoma with partly solid areas

G3  Predominantly solid or entirely undif-
ferentiated carcinoma

Stage II
The carcinoma has involved the corpus and
the cervix but has not extended outside the
uterus

Stage III
The carcinoma has extended outside the
uterus but not outside the true pelvis

Stage IV
The carcinoma has extended outside the
true pelvis or has obviously involved the mu-
cosa of the bladder or rectum. A bullous
edema as such does not permit a case to be
allotted to stage IV

Stage IVA  Spread of the growth to adjacent
organs

Stage IVB  Spread to distant organs

Notes About the Staging. — Studies of large
series of cases of endometrial carcinoma limited
to the corpus have shown that the prognosis is
related to some extent to the size of the uterus.
However, an enlargement of the uterus may be
caused by fibroids, adenomyosis, and other dis-
orders. Therefore, the size of the uterus cannot
serve as a basis for subgrouping stage I cases.
The length and the width of the uterine cavity are
related to the prognosis. The great majority of
cases of corpus cancer belong to stage I. A sub-
division of these cases is desirable. Therefore,
the Cancer Committee recommends a subdivi-
sion of stage I cases with regard to the length of
the sound used and to the histologic examina-
tion of the curettings.

Extension of the carcinoma to the endocervix
is confirmed by fractional curettage, hysterog-
raphy, or hysteroscopy. Scrapping the cervix
should be the first step of the curettage and the
specimens from the cervix should be examined
separately. Occasionally, it may be difficult to
decide whether the endocervix is involved by the
cancer. In such cases, the simultaneous pres-
ence of normal cervical glands and cancer in the
same section will give the final diagnosis.

Extension of the carcinoma outside the uterus
should refer a case to stage III or stage IV. The
presence of metastases in the vagina or in the
ovary permits allotment of a case to stage III.

TNM NOMENCLATURE

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

T1S  Carcinoma in situ

t1, 1a, 1b, 2, 3, 4a, 4b  See corresponding FIGO stages

3.2 Nodal involvement (N)

NX  Not possible to assess the regional
nodes

N0  No involvement of regional nodes

N1  Evidence of regional node involve-
ment

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed

M0  No (known) distant metastasis

M1  Distant metastasis present

Specify ___________________________
Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
  Specify ____________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING (Correlation of AJC, TNM, and FIGO Nomenclatures)

- Stage 0 TIS
- Stage I A T1a NX M0
  B T1b NX M0
- Stage II T2 NX M0
- Stage III T3 NX M0
  T1-3 N1 M0
- Stage IVA T4a NX-1 M0
  IVB T4b NX-1 M0
  Any M1

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

It is desirable that stage I cases be subgrouped according to the degree of differentiation described on microscopic examination. The predominant lesion is adenocarcinoma, but all histologic types should be reported. However, hactiocarcinomas, sarcomas, mixed mesodermal tumors, and carcinosarcomas should be presented separately.

7.0 DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

The form presented is suitable for tumors at all gynecologic sites. One should be filled out on each new case entered into the registry.

OVARY

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: Ovaries are a pair of solid bodies, flattened ovoids 2.0 to 4.0 cm in diameter, that are connected by a peritoneal fold to the broad ligament and by the infundibulo-pelvic ligament to the lateral wall of the pelvis.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The lymphatic drainage occurs by the utero-ovarian and round ligament trunks and an external iliac accessory route into the following regional nodes: external iliac, common iliac, hypogastric, lateral sacral, and para-aortic nodes, and, rarely, to inguinal nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: The peritoneum including the omentum and pelvic and abdominal viscera are common sites for seeding. Diaphragmatic involvement and liver metastases are common. Pulmonary and pleural involvements are frequently seen.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

It is desirable to have a clinical stage grouping of ovarian tumors similar to those already existing for other malignant tumors in the female pelvis. Sometimes it is impossible to come to a final diagnosis by inspection or palpation or by any of the other methods recommended for clinical staging of carcinoma of the uterus and vagina. Therefore, the Cancer Committee of FIGO has recommended that the clinical staging of primary carcinoma of the ovary should be based on clinical examination, that is, curettage and roentgen examination of the lungs and skeleton, as well as on findings by laparoscopy or laparotomy.

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Although clinical studies similar to those for other sites may be used, the establishment of a diagnosis most often requires a
l Up, which is most widely accepted in surgical-pathologic staging. Clinical studies, if carcinoma of the ovary is diagnosed, include routine radiography of chest and abdomen, liver studies, and hemograms.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Laparotomy and biopsy of all suspected sites of involvement provide the basis for this type of staging, this staging is often identical to postsurgical staging. The role of laparoscopy needs to be better defined. Histologic and cytologic data are required.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: This should include laparotomy, resection of ovarian masses, as well as hysterectomy. Biopsies of all suspicious sites, such as the omentum, mesentery, liver, diaphragm, and pelvic and para-aortic nodes, are required.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Second-look laparotomies and laparoscopy are being evaluated due to the limitation of routine pelvic and abdominal examinations in detecting early recurrence. Other optional and investigative procedures include ultrasound and computerized axial tomography. All suspected recurrences need biopsy confirmation.

3.0 STAGING CLASSIFICATION
FIGO Nomenclature

Staging is based on findings at clinical examination and surgical exploration. The final histologic findings (and cytologic when available) after surgery are to be considered in the staging.

Stage I
Growth limited to the ovaries

Stage IA Growth limited to one ovary; no ascites

IAi No tumor on the external surface; capsule intact

IAii Tumor present on the external surface, or capsule(s) ruptured, or both

Stage IB Growth limited to both ovaries; no ascites

Stage IC Tumor either stage IA or IB, but with ascites* present or with positive peritoneal washings

Stage II
Growth involving one or both ovaries with pelvic extension

Stage IIA Extension and/or metastases to the uterus and/or tubes

Stage IIB Extension to other pelvic tissues

Stage IIC Tumor either stage IIA or stage IIB, but with ascites* present or with positive peritoneal washings

Stage III
Growth involving one or both ovaries with intraperitoneal metastases outside the pelvis, or positive retroperitoneal nodes, or both. Tumor limited to the true pelvis with histologically proven malignant extension to small bowel or omentum

Stage IV
Growth involving one or both ovaries with distant metastases. If pleural effusion is present there must be positive cytology to allot a case to stage IV. Parenchymal liver metastasis equals stage IV

Special Category
Unexplored cases that are thought to be ovarian carcinoma

TNM NOMENCLATURE

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

T1a, T1b, T1c, 1c, 2a, 2b
See corresponding FIGO stages

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

NX Not possible to assess regional nodes

Ascites is peritoneal effusion that, in the opinion of the surgeon, is pathologic, or clearly exceeds normal amounts, or both
N0 No involvement of regional nodes
N1 Evidence of regional node involvement

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify ______________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify ______________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING (Correlation of AJC, TNM, and FIGO Nomenclatures)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>IA1i</th>
<th>T1ai</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IAii</td>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB1</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBii</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC</td>
<td>T1c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II A</td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II B</td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II C</td>
<td>T2c</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1-2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N0-1</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any M1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

The task force of the AJC endorses the histologic typing of ovarian tumors as presented in the WHO publication no. 9, 1973, and recommends that all ovarian epithelial tumors be subdivided according to a simplified version of this. The types recommended at the present time are as follows: serous tumors, mucinous tumors, endometrioid tumors, clear cell (mesonephroid) tumors, undifferentiated tumors, and unclassified tumors.

A) Serous cystomas
1) Serous benign cystadenomas
2) Serous cystadenomas with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (low potential malignancy)
3) Serous cystadenocarcinomas

B) Mucinous cystomas
1) Mucinous benign cystadenomas
2) Mucinous cystadenomas with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (low potential malignancy)
3) Mucinous cystadenocarcinomas

C) Endometrioid tumors (similar to adenocarcinomas in the endometrium)
1) Endometrioid benign cysts
2) Endometrioid tumors with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (low potential malignancy)
3) Endometrioid adenocarcinomas

D) Clear cell (mesonephroid) tumors
1) Benign clear cell tumors
2) Clear cell tumors with proliferating activity of the epithelial cells and nuclear abnormalities, but with no infiltrative destructive growth (low potential malignancy)
3) Clear cell cystadenocarcinomas

E) Unclassified tumors that cannot be allotted to one of the groups A through D
F) No histology

G) Other malignant tumors
Malignant tumors other than those of the common epithelial types are not to be included with the categories listed above. However, the more common ones such as granulosa cell tumor, immature teratoma, dysgerminoma, and endodermal sinus tumor may be collected and reported separately by institutions so desiring, particularly those with a pediatric population among their patients.

In some cases of inoperable widespread malignant tumor, it may be impossible for the gynecologist and for the pathologist to decide the origin of the growth. In order to evaluate the results obtained in the treatment of carcinoma of the ovary, it is, however, necessary that all patients are reported on, as well as those who are thought to have a malignant ovarian tumor. If clinical examination cannot exclude the possibility that the lesion is a primary ovarian carcinoma, a case should be reported in the group "special category" and will belong to either histologic group E or F. Cases where exploratory surgery has shown that obvious ovarian malignant tumor is present, but where no biopsy has been taken, should be classified as ovarian carcinoma, "no histology."

7.0 DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

The form presented is applicable to tumors of all gynecologic sites. One should be filled out on each new case as it is entered into the registry. The diagrams are particularly useful in ovarian cancer.

VAGINA

The rules for classification are similar to those for the cervix uteri and should be referred to accordingly.

1.0 STAGING CLASSIFICATION
FIGO Nomenclature

Stage 0
Carcinoma in situ; intraepithelial carcinoma

Stage I
The carcinoma is limited to the vaginal wall

Stage II
The carcinoma has involved the subvaginal tissue but has not extended to the pelvic wall

Stage III
The carcinoma has extended to the pelvic wall

Stage IV
The carcinoma has extended beyond the true pelvis or has involved the mucosa of the bladder or rectum. Bullous edema as such does not permit a case to be allotted to stage IV

Stage IVA Spread of the growth to adjacent organs

Stage IVB Spread to distant organs

TNM Nomenclature

1.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TIS Carcinoma in situ

T1, T2, T3, T4a, T4b
See corresponding FIGO stages

1.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

NX Not possible to assess the regional nodes

N0 No involvement of regional nodes

N1 Evidence of regional node involvement

1.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify ________________
Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

Stage IV
Tumor of any size (1) infiltrating the bladder mucosa or the rectal mucosa or both, including the upper part of the urethral mucosa, and/or (2) fixed to the bone or other distant metastases. Fixed or ulcerated nodes in either or both groins.

TNM Nomenclature

1.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TIS, T1, T2, T3, T4
See corresponding FIGO stages

1.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

- NX Not possible to assess the regional nodes
- N0 No involvement of regional nodes
- N1 Evidence of regional node involvement
- N3 Fixed or ulcerated nodes
- N4 Juxtaregional node involvement

1.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

- MX Not assessed
- M0 No (known) distant metastasis
- M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING
Use of the form is recommended in every new case entered into the registry regardless of site.
### DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

**Name**

**Address**

**Hospital or Clinic Number**

**Age**

**Sex**

**Race**

**ONCOLOGY RECORD**

**Anatomic Site of Cancer**

**Histologic Cell Type**

**Grade**

**cTNM**

**sTNM**

**pTNM**

**rTNM**

**aTNM**

---

#### SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION—

**CERVIX UTERI, CORPUS UTERI, OVARY, VAGINA, AND VULVA**

**Anatomic Site**

**FIGO Stage**

**TNM**

**Histology**

**Grade**

**Depth of Invasion**

**Lymphatic**

**Blood Vessel**

**Nodal**

**Metastases**

---

**Uterine Sound**

< 8 cm

> 8 cm

**Cyst Ruptured**

**Ascites**

**Pleural Effusion**

---

**Treatment Planned**

**Surgery**

**Radiotherapy**

**Chemotherapy**

**Hormone**

**Immunotherapy**

---

**Treatment Given**

**Surgery**

**Radiotherapy**

**Chemotherapy**

**Hormone**

**Immunotherapy**

---

**Reason for Change**

**Relevant Surgery**

**Residual disease**

No

Micro

Macro

---

**Relevant Radiotherapy**

**Transvag**

75-140 kV

200-300 kV

**External**

1-6 meV

18-35 meV

**Tumor dose**

**Time**

**Intracavitary**

**Interstitial**

**Isotope**

---

**Relevant Medical Treatment**

**Complications**

---

**Special Comment**

An abbreviated classification is printed on the back of this sheet for guidance in completing the form. For details and explanations consult the manual.

For the use of registry secretaries. This space is available for follow-up information.

**Status at:**

6 mo

1 yr

2 yr

3 yr

4 yr

5 yr

≥ 5 yr

---

*cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.*
### DEFINITIONS

**CERVIX UTERI**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>(T1S)</th>
<th>Carcinoma in situ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>(T1)</td>
<td>Carcinoma confined to cervix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>(T1a)</td>
<td>Microinvasive carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>(T1b)</td>
<td>All other cases of stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>(T2)</td>
<td>Carcinoma extends beyond cervix but not to pelvic wall or lower vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>(T2a)</td>
<td>No obvious parametrial involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>(T2b)</td>
<td>Obvious parametrial involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>(T3)</td>
<td>Carcinoma of pelvic wall or lower vagina, or ureteral obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIA</td>
<td>(T3a)</td>
<td>No extension of pelvic wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>(T3b)</td>
<td>Extension to one or both pelvic walls, or ureteral obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>(T4)</td>
<td>Carcinoma beyond true pelvis or invading bladder or rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVA</td>
<td>(T4a)</td>
<td>Spread to adjacent organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVB</td>
<td>(T4b)</td>
<td>Spread to distant organs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CORPUS UTERI**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>(T1S)</th>
<th>Carcinoma in situ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>(T1)</td>
<td>Carcinoma confined to the corpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>(T1a)</td>
<td>Uterine cavity greater than 8 cm in length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>(T1b)</td>
<td>Uterine cavity greater than 8 cm in length</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stage I should be subgrouped by histology as follows:
- G1-highly differentiated
- G2-moderately differentiated
- G3-undifferentiated

**OVARY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>(T1)</th>
<th>Growth limited to ovaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>(T1a)</td>
<td>Limited to one ovary no ascites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>(T1b)</td>
<td>Limited to both ovaries, no ascites</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stage II | (T2) Growth involving one or both ovaries with pelvic extension only |
| IIA    | (T2a) | Extension to uterus and/or tubes only |
| IIB    | (T2b) | Extension to other pelvic tissues |
| IIC    | (T2c) | Either IIA or IIB with ascites |

Stage III | (T3) Spread outside pelvis or to retroperitoneal nodes or both |

Stage IV | (T4) Spread to distant sites (pleural effusion must be confirmed histologically) |

**VAGINA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>(T1S)</th>
<th>Carcinoma in situ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>(T1)</td>
<td>Carcinoma limited to vaginal wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>(T2)</td>
<td>Carcinoma involves subvaginal tissues but does not extend to pelvic wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>(T3)</td>
<td>Carcinoma extends to pelvic wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>(T4)</td>
<td>Extension beyond true pelvis or invading bladder or rectum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VULVA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>(T1S)</th>
<th>Carcinoma in situ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>(T1)</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less, confined to vulva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>(T2)</td>
<td>Tumor greater than 2 cm, confined to vulva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>(T3)</td>
<td>Tumor of any size extending to urethra, vagina, or anus, or (T1-2, N1-2, M0) Nodes obviously involved but mobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>(T4)</td>
<td>Tumor invading bladder or rectum or bone or any N3 (fixed nodes); or any M1 (distant metastasis)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Uniform TNM Classification**

**Nodes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Node</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Not possible to assess regional nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No evidence of regional node involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Evidence of regional node involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Fixed or ulcerated regional nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N4</td>
<td>Juxtaregional node involvement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Distant Metastasis (M)**

| MX   | Not assessed |
| M0   | No (known) distant metastasis |
| M1   | Distant metastasis present |

Specify sites according to the following notations:
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

Residual Tumor (R)

| R0   | No residual tumor |
| R1   | Microscopic residual tumor |
| R2   | Macroscopic residual tumor |

Specify ________
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE BREAST

The staging system applies to in situ carcinoma and to infiltrating cancer of the breast. Histologic verification is mandatory and the cell type must be recorded. Unconfirmed cases must be reported separately.

Staging of breast cancer was jointly recommended by the UICC and AJC in 1972 for a trial period of 1973 to 1977. There have been only minor changes in the TNM definitions for clinical-diagnostic staging. Added in this manual are definitions for postsurgical treatment-pathologic classifications which differ slightly from the former.

The stage grouping has been altered from that recommended in 1972 based on detailed studies carried out by the breast task force. However, the stage grouping previously recommended is also included in this chapter.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The mammary gland consists of glandular tissue within a dense fibroareolar stroma situated on the anterior chest wall. Deep to the breast is the fascia overlying the pectoralis major, which in turn covers the ribs and intercostal muscles of the first six intercostal spaces.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The breast lymphatics drain via three major routes: axillary, transpectoral, and internal mammary trunks into numerous surrounding first station nodes such as axillary (low, middle), axillary apex, and infraclavicular (referred to as levels I, II, and III, respectively) and internal mammary, interpectoral, and subclavicular. Subclavicular nodes are juxta-regional on the homolateral side. Disease involvement in all other nodes — cervical, contralateral supraclavicular, and internal mammary — is equivalent to distant metastases.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: All distant visceral sites are potential sites of metastatic disease. The four major sites are bone, lung, brain, and liver, but this widely metastasizing disease has been found in virtually all remote sites.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The following are required: physical examination, including careful inspection of skin and palpation of mammary glands and regional nodes; determination of the degree of fixation with and without flexing pectoral muscles; routine laboratory studies and hemograms; and chest films and isotopic scans, particularly of the osseous system. Mammography and thermography are optional staging procedures.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Needle biopsy or excisional biopsy of nodes with a sampling of axillary, internal mammary, or supraclavicular nodes needs to be noted separately and is not considered part of a clinical staging system. Suspected skin involvement should be confirmed by biopsy.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Evaluation of the breast in its entirety and/or the axillary contents with careful pathologic evaluation of all nodes is commonly done. This should never be substituted for clinical evaluation.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: All recurrences in the chest wall and in regional sites require biopsy proof and full workup for remote metastases by means of laboratory, roentgenographic, and radioisotopic studies. Accessible remote metastases initially require pathologic confirmation.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

Clinical-Diagnostic Classification

TX Tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
TIS Paget's disease of the nipple with no demonstrable tumor.

Note: Paget's disease with a demonstrable tumor is classified according to size of the tumor.
T1* Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
  T1a No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia or muscle
  T1b Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle

T2* Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in its greatest dimension
  T2a No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle
  T2b Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle

T3* Tumor more than 5 cm in its greatest dimension
  T3a No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle
  T3b Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle

T4 Tumor of any size with direct extension to chest wall or skin
  Note: Chest wall includes ribs, intercostal muscles, and serratus anterior muscle, but not pectoral muscle
  T4a Fixation to chest wall
  T4b Edema (including peau d'orange), ulceration of the skin of the breast, or satellite skin nodules confined to the same breast
  T4c Both of above
  T4d Inflammatory carcinoma

Postoperative Treatment-Pathologic Classification

TX Tumor cannot be assessed
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
TIS Preinvasive carcinoma (carcinoma in situ), noninfiltrating intraductal carcinoma, or Paget's disease of nipple

T1a and b are the same as clinical-diagnostic classification

T1a
  i: Tumor < 0.5 cm²
  ii: Tumor 0.5-0.9 cm
  iii: Tumor 1.0-1.9 cm

T2a and b are the same as clinical-diagnostic classification

T3a and b are the same as clinical-diagnostic classification

T4a and b are the same as clinical-diagnostic classification

T4d Inflammatory carcinoma

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

Clinical-Diagnostic Classification

NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed clinically

N0 No palpable homolateral axillary nodes

N1 Movable homolateral axillary nodes
  N1a Nodes not considered to contain growth
  N1b Nodes considered to contain growth

N2 Homolateral axillary nodes containing growth and fixed to one another or to other structures

N3 Homolateral supraclavicular or infraclavicular nodes containing growth or edema of the arm.
  Note: Edema of the arm may be caused by lymphatic obstruction and lymph nodes may not then be palpable.

Postoperative Treatment-Pathologic Classification

NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed clinically

N0 No metastatic homolateral axillary nodes

T1, T2, or T3 without the classification.

*Dimpling of the skin, nipple retraction, or any other skin changes except those in T4b may occur in T1, T2, or T3 without the classification.

**Homolateral internal mammary nodes considered to contain growth are included in N3 for surgical-evaluative classification and postoperative treatment-pathologic classification.
N1 Movable homolateral axillary metastatic nodes not fixed to one another or other structures
   N1a Lymph nodes with only histologic metastatic growth
   N1b Gross metastatic carcinoma in lymph nodes

   i: Micrometastasis smaller than 0.2 cm
   ii: Metastasis (larger than 0.2 cm) in 1 to 3 lymph nodes
   iii: Metastasis to 4 or more lymph nodes
   iv: Extension of metastasis beyond the lymph node capsule
   v: Any positive node greater than 2 cm in diameter

N2 Homolateral axillary nodes containing metastatic tumor and fixed to one another or to other structures

N3 Homolateral supraclavicular or infraclavicular nodes containing tumor or edema of the arm.†

Note: Edema of the arm may be caused by lymphatic obstruction and lymph nodes may not then be palpable.

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)
   MX Not assessed
   M0 No (known) distant metastasis
   M1 Distant metastasis present
      Specify __________________

      Specify sites according to the following notations:
      Pulmonary - PUL
      Osseous - OSS
      Hepatic - HEP
      Brain - BRA
      Lymph Nodes - LYM
      Bone Marrow - MAR
      Pleura - PLE
      Skin - SKI
      Eye - EYE
      Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
   R0 No residual tumor
   R1 Microscopic residual tumor
   R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
      Specify __________________

5.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY*  

5.1 Noninfiltrating
   Paget’s disease with intraductal carcinoma
   In situ ductal (intraductal) carcinoma
   In situ lobular carcinoma

   Infiltrating
   Paget’s disease with infiltrating carcinoma
   Ductal carcinoma
   Infiltrating, not otherwise specified
   Adenoid cystic
   Comedo
   Medullary
   Mucinous (colloid)
   Papillary
   Other, specify __________________

   Lobular carcinoma, infiltrating

   Other Neoplasms
   Cystosarcoma phylloides, malignant
   Sarcoma, specify type ____________

5.2 Tumor Grade (G)
   G1 Well-differentiated
   G2 Moderately well-differentiated
   G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

   Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

*Inflammatory carcinoma is a clinicopathologic entity characterized by diffuse brawny induration of the skin of the breast with an erysipeloid edge, usually without an underlying palpable mass. Histologically infiltrating mammary carcinoma diffusely permeates dermal lymphatics. (Inflamed cancers that are clinically similar to the above due to inflammation, infection, or necrosis but lack microscopic dermal lymphatic permeation are not classified as inflammatory carcinoma.)
6.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I
T1a N0 or N1a
T1b N0 or N1a M0

Stage II
T0 N1b
T2a N0 or N1a or N1b
T2b N0 or N1a or N1b M0

Stage III
Any T3 N1 or N2 M0

Stage IV
T4 Any N Any M
Any T N3 Any M
Any T Any N M1

The stage grouping recommended in this manual does vary from that recommended for the trial period. The present recommendations are primarily for postsurgical treatment-pathologic staging and are based on detailed studies carried out by the AJC Breast Task Force.

If breast cancer is to be staged in the clinical-diagnostic time frame, then that recommended by the UICC and AJC in 1972 may be used but this should be so recorded in any reporting. The 1972 clinical-diagnostic stage grouping is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STAGE GROUPING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a N0 or N1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b N0 or N1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 N1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a N1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b N1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a N0 or N1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b N0 or N1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T3 Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T4 Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T Any N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

INSTITUTIONAL IDENTIFICATION

Name ____________________________
Address __________________________
Hospital or Clinic ___________________
Address __________________________

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer __________________________
Histologic Cell Type __________________________
Grade __________________________
Time of Classification* __________________________
Date of Classification __________________________
cTNM ______ sTNM ______ pTNM ______ rTNM ______ aTNM ______

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — BREAST

General
Marital status: S _____ M _____ Div/sep _____ Wid _____
Religion: P _____ C _____ H _____ Other ______

Symptoms
Breast: L _____ R _____ Mass: Yes _____ No _____
Increase in size: Yes _____ No _____ S1 _____ X _____
2X _____ >3X _____
Pain: Yes _____ No _____ In mass _____ In breast _____
Premenstrual: _____ R _____ L _____
Nipple discharge: Yes _____ No _____ Clear _____
Bloody _____ Brown _____ Other _____
Frequency: 1X _____ 2-5X _____ >5X _____

Other symptoms __________________________

Detected by: Self _____ Physician _____ Other ______
X-ray _____ Thermog _____

Duration of symptoms from onset to admission (mo): < 1 _____ 1-3 _____ 4-6 _____ 7-12 _____

Menstrual History
Age of menarche: < 12 yr _____ 13-16 yr _____ > 16 yr _____ never _____
Periods: Reg _____ Irreg _____
Date Imp: Mo _____ Yr _____

Menopause: No _____ Natural _____ Surgical _____ X-ray _____

Parity: Gr _____ Para _____ Ab _____ Age at 1st full term delivery _____ yr

Hormones: No _____ Yes _____ Birth control pill _____ Estrogen _____ Fertility pill _____
Other: __________________________
Duration used: < 2 mo _____ 1 yr _____ 1-5 yr _____
> 5 yr _____ Last used: < 2 mo _____ 1 yr _____ 1-5 yr _____ > 5 yr _____

Family History of Breast Cancer
Maternal: None _____ grdmthr _____ mthr _____ aunt _____ sib _____ dtr _____
Paternal: None _____ grdmthr _____ mthr _____ aunt _____

Other Cancer
Personal: Yes _____ No _____ Site __________________________
Family: Yes _____ No _____ Site __________________________
Relative: __________________________

Previous Breast Biopsy
No _____ Yes _____ R-date _____ L-date _____

Primary Tumor
Size: cm Multiple ______
Skin changes: Fixation: None _____ Degree (circle) 1. 2. 3. 4
Mammography: Neg _____ Pos _____ Equivocal _____

Nodes: Ipsilateral: Neg _____ Pos _____
Contralateral: Neg _____ Pos _____

Distant Metastasis
MX _____ M0 _____ M1 _____ Specify __________________________
Sites: Lung _____ Bone _____ Liver _____ Other __________________________

Classification
T _____ N _____ M _____

Stage __________________________
Residual Tumor __________________________

Performance Status (H)
H Scale used: AJC _____ Zubrod _____ Karnofsky _____

Clinical Tumor Size: ______ ______ ______ Measured on: Patient _____ X-ray _____

Pathologic Final Tumor Size: ______ ______ ______ Measured on: Gross _____ Micro only _____

*ctTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
### TNM Classification

**Primary Tumor (T)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Clinical-Diagnostic Classification</strong></th>
<th><strong>DEFINITIONS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Tumor cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIS</td>
<td>Paget's disease of the nipple with no demonstrable tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Paget's disease with a demonstrable tumor is classified according to size of the tumor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1*</td>
<td>Tumor 2 cm or less in greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia or muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2*</td>
<td>Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in its greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3*</td>
<td>Tumor more than 5 cm in its greatest dimension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3a</td>
<td>No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3b</td>
<td>Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumor of any size with direct extension to chest wall or skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4a</td>
<td>Fixation to chest wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4b</td>
<td>Edema (including peau d'orange), ulceration of the skin of the breast, or satellite skin nodules confined to the same breast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4c</td>
<td>Both of above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4d</td>
<td>Inflammatory carcinoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Classification**

| TX | Tumor cannot be assessed |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumor |
| TIS | Preinvasive carcinoma (carcinoma in situ), noninfiltrating intraductal carcinoma, or Paget's disease of nipple |
| T1 | Same as clinical-diagnostic classification |
| T1a | tumor < 0.5 cm |
| T1b | tumor 0.5-0.9 cm |
| T1c | tumor 1.0-1.9 cm |
| T2 | Same as clinical-diagnostic classification |
| T2a | No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia or muscle |
| T2b | Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle |
| T3 | Same as clinical-diagnostic classification |
| T3a | No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia or muscle |
| T3b | Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle |
| T4 | Same as clinical-diagnostic classification |
| T4a | No fixation to underlying pectoral fascia or muscle |
| T4b | Fixation to underlying pectoral fascia and/or muscle |

*Dimpling of the skin, nipple retraction, or any other skin changes except those in T4b may occur in T1, T2, or T3 without the classification.

**Nodal Involvement (N)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Clinical-Diagnostic Classification</strong></th>
<th><strong>DEFINITIONS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed clinically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No palpable homolateral axillary nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Movable homolateral axillary nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1a</td>
<td>Nodes not considered to contain growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1b</td>
<td>Nodes considered to contain growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Homolateral axillary nodes considered to contain growth and fixed to one another or to other structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Homolateral supraclavicular or infraclavicular nodes considered to contain growth or edema of the arm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Classification**

| NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed clinically |
| N0 | No metastatic homolateral axillary nodes |
| N1 | Movable homolateral axillary metastatic nodes not fixed to one another or other structures |
| N1a | Lymph nodes with only histologic metastatic growth |
| N1b | Gross metastatic carcinoma in lymph nodes |
| i: | micrometastases smaller than 0.2 cm |
| ii: | metastasis (> 0.2 cm) in 1 to 3 lymph nodes |
| iii: | metastases to 4 or more lymph nodes |
| iv: | extension of metastasis beyond the lymph node capsule |
| v: | any positive node > 2 cm in diameter |
| N2 | Homolateral axillary nodes containing metastatic tumor and fixed to one another or to other structures |
| N3 | Homolateral supraclavicular or infraclavicular nodes containing tumor or edema of the arm |

*Edema of the arm may be caused by lymphatic obstruction and lymph nodes may not then be palpable.
M — DISTANT METASTASIS

MX  Not assessed
M0  No (known) distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis present

Specify ___________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

HISTOPATHOLOGY*

Noninfiltrating:
- Paget’s disease with intraductal carcinoma
- In situ ductal (intraductal) carcinoma

Infiltrating:
- Paget’s disease with infiltrating carcinoma
- Ductal carcinoma
- Lobular carcinoma

Other Neoplasms:
- Cystosarcoma phylloides, malignant
- Sarcoma

*Inflammatory carcinoma is a clinicopathologic entity characterized by diffuse brawny induration of the skin of the breast with an erysipeloid edge, usually without an underlying palpable mass. Histologically infiltrating mammary carcinoma diffusely permeates dermal lymphatics. (Inflamed cancers that are clinically similar to the above due to inflammation, infection, or necrosis but lack microscopic dermal lymphatic permeation are not classified as inflammatory carcinoma.)

GRADE

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

STAGE GROUPING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T1a</th>
<th>N0 or N1a</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td>T1b</td>
<td>N0 or N1a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2a</td>
<td>N0 or N1a or N1b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2b</td>
<td>N0 or N1a or N1b</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td>Any T3</td>
<td>N1 or N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>Any M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Any M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Residual Tumor (R)
- R0  No residual
- R1  Microscopic residual tumor
- R2  Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify ___________

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0 Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>70-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAGING OF CANCER AT GENITOURINARY SITES
Kidney, Bladder, Prostate, and Testes

The four sites that are included in this section, kidney, bladder, prostate, and testes, have their unique staging problems but can be classified according to the definitions of T, N, and M. The objective data that have accumulated do not provide a sufficient basis for the structuring of a staging schema. Minimal requirements for TNM categorization are described under RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION and include arteriography, lymphography, and laparotomy for deep-seated tumors; symbols are used consistent with staging procedures. These classifications require further field testing.

KIDNEY

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The kidney is encased by a fibrous capsule and is surrounded by perirenal fat. The kidney is composed of the cortex (glomeruli, convoluted tubules) and the medulla (pyramids of converging tubules, Henle’s loops). Each papilla opens into the minor calices which in turn unite in the major calices, draining into the renal pelvis. At the hilus are the pelvis, ureter, and renal artery and vein. Gerota’s fascia overlies the psosas and quadratus lumborum.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The major collecting lymphatic trunks are the anterior, middle, and posterior channels that drain into the para-aortic lymph nodes located above and below the renal artery (i.e., high suprarenal and infrarenal arteries). There is a lateral caval node in the right side and a hilar-located renal vein node on the left, more lateral to the para-aortic nodal chain. The lower para-aortic nodes complete the first station at the bifurcation of the aorta. Common iliac, pelvic, and mediastinal nodes are juxtaregional. Supraclavicular nodes are considered metastatic.

1.3 Metastases: Common metastatic sites include bone, liver, lung, and brain.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Clinical examination, urography, arteriography, and venocavography are required for the assessment of the primary tumor. Additional studies may include lymphography. Evaluation for distant metastases should be done by routine laboratory biochemical studies, a hemogram, bone films, and isotopic studies.

*Computerized body scan and/or other modalities may subsequently be used to supply information concerning minimal requirements for staging.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Laparotomy, mediastinotomy, and biopsy can be utilized.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Resection of the primary tumor, kidney, Gerota’s fascia, perinephric fat, and renal vein is required.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Utilization of the above procedures when indicated and biopsy confirmation are desirable.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Minimum requirements cannot be met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Small tumor, minimal renal and calyceal distortion or deformity. Circumscribed neovascuature surrounded by normal parenchyma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Large tumor with deformity and/or enlargement of kidney and/or collecting system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T3a Tumor involving perinephric tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3b Tumor involving renal vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3c Tumor involving renal vein and infradiaphragmatic vena cava</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: Under T3, tumor may extend into perinephric tissues, into renal vein, and into vena cava as shown on cavography. In these instances, the T classification may be shown as T3a, b, and c, or some appropriate combination, depending on extension—for example, T3a,b is tumor in perinephric fat and extending into renal vein.

T4

T4a Tumor invasion of neighboring structures (e.g., muscle, bowel)

T4b Tumor involving supradiafragmatic vena cava

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)
The regional lymph nodes are the paraaortic and paracaval nodes. The juxtaregional lymph nodes are the pelvic nodes and the mediastinal nodes.

NX Minimum requirements cannot be met

N0 No evidence of involvement of regional nodes

N1 Single, homolateral regional nodal involvement

N2 Involvement of multiple regional or contralateral or bilateral nodes

N3 Fixed regional nodes (assessable only at surgical exploration)

N4 Involvement of juxtaregional nodes

Note: If lymphography is source of staging, add "1" between "N" and designator number; if histologic proof is provided, "+" if positive and "−" if negative. Thus, N12+ indicates multiple positive nodes seen on lymphography and proved at operation by biopsy.

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify ______________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology (p) is proved.

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor

R1 Microscopic residual tumor

R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify ______________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING
No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

6.1 The predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma; subtypes are clear-cell and granular cell. A grading system as below is recommended when feasible. Reference to WHO nomenclature is advised.

6.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated

G2 Moderately well-differentiated

G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATE FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ____________________________
Address ____________________________
Hospital or Clinic ________________________
Address ____________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number ________________
Age ___ Sex ___ Race ___

INSTITUTIONAL IDENTIFICATION

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer ____________________________
Histologic Cell Type ____________________________
Grade ____________________________
Time of Classification* cTNM _____ sTNM _____ pTNM _____ rTNM _____ aTNM _____
Date of Classification ____________________________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — KIDNEY

Symptoms
Hematuria
Back pain
Bone pain
Fever
Weight loss
Other (specify) ________________

Dates
INA¹ Antecedent Current

Nonmalignant Disease
CV _____ GI _____ GU _____ Met/End _____ Resp _____
Allergy ______________ Describe: ______________

Other Malignant Disease (specify) ______________

Treatment
Surgery
Biopsy
Nephrectomy
Type if known ______________
Radiation therapy
Site ______________
Dosage ______________
Chemotherapy
Drugs ______________
Other (i.e., immunotherapy) ______________

Dates
INA¹ Antecedent Current

Purpose of Treatment
Curative _____ Palliative _____ INA¹ _____

Classification
T _____ N _____ M _____

Stage
No stage grouping recommended

Residual Tumor
R

Host — Performance Status (H)
H _____ Scale used: AJC ____________ Zubrod ____________ Karnofsky ____________

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.

¹ Information not available.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)

TX Minimum requirements cannot be met
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Small tumor, minimal renal and calyceal distortion or deformity. Circumscribed neovascularature surrounded by normal parenchyma
T2 Large tumor with deformity and/or enlargement of kidney and/or collecting system
T3a Tumor involving perinephric tissues
T3b Tumor involving renal vein
T3c Tumor involving renal vein and infradiaphragmatic vena cava

Note: Under T3, tumor may extend into perinephric tissues, into renal vein, and into vena cava as shown on caviography. In these instances, the T classification may be shown as T3a, b, and c, or some appropriate combination, depending on extension—for example, T3a,b is tumor in perinephric fat and extending into renal vein.

T4a Tumor invasion of neighboring structures (e.g., muscle, bowel)
T4b Tumor involving supradiaphragmatic vena cava

Nodal Involvement (N)
The regional lymph nodes are the para-aortic and paracaval nodes. The juxtaregional lymph nodes are the pelvic nodes and the mediastinal nodes.
NX Minimum requirements cannot be met
N0 No evidence of involvement of regional nodes
N1 Single, homolateral regional nodal involvement
N2 Involvement of multiple regional or contralateral or bilateral nodes
N3 Fixed regional nodes (assessable only at surgical exploration)
N4 Involvement of juxtaregional nodes

Note: If lymphography is source of staging, add "+" between "N" and designator number; if histologic proof is provided, "+" if positive, and "−" if negative. Thus, N12 indicates multiple positive nodes seen on lymphography and proved at operation by biopsy.

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify ____________________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Osseous - OSS
- Pleura - PLE
- Hepatic - HEP
- Skin - SKI
- Brain - BRA
- Eye - EYE
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Other - OTH

Note: Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology (p) is proved

HISTOPATHOLOGY

The predominant cancer is adenocarcinoma. Subtypes are clear-cell and granular cell. A grading system as below is recommended when feasible. Reference to WHO nomenclature is advised.

STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

GRADE

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify ____________________________

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HOST (H)</th>
<th>Performance Status of Host</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>70-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The urinary bladder is a hollow viscus consisting of three layers: the mucosa and submucosa, the muscularis, and the serosa. In the male, it is in relationship to the rectum and seminal vesicles posteriorly, the prostate inferiorty, and the pubis and peritoneum anteriorly. In the female, the vagina is located posteriorly and the uterus superiorly. The bladder is extraperitoneal in location.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The regional lymph nodes are the pelvic nodes below the bifurcation of the common iliac arteries. The juxtaregional lymph nodes are the inguinal nodes, the common iliac, and para-aortic nodes.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to lung, bone, and liver is most common.

2. RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION*

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Primary tumor assessment includes bimanual examination under anesthesia before and after endoscopic surgery (biopsy or transurethral resection) and/or histologic verification of the presence or absence of tumor. Add "m" for multiple tumors. Intravenous urography is required, but voiding cystograms, pelvic arteriography, and pneumographic studies are optional and cannot be used alone for this classification. Lymphography is necessary for nodal evaluation. Evaluation for distant metastases requires chest films, biochemical and blood profiles, and isotopic studies as indicated.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Laparotomy or extraperitoneal surgical evaluation of primary tumor and lymph nodes with biopsy material other than endoscopic are required for this staging.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Total cystectomy and lymph node dissection are required to utilize this staging.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Biopsy confirmation where feasible is desirable to determine persistence after irradiation or surgery. Other procedures as noted above may be utilized, particularly in distant visceral sites.

"Computerized body scan and/or other modalities may subsequently be used to supply information concerning minimal requirements for staging.

3. TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

The suffix "m" should be added to the appropriate T category to indicate multiple lesions. Papilloma is classified as "G0."

| TX       | Minimum requirements cannot be met |
| T0       | No evidence of primary tumor        |
| T1S      | Sessile carcinoma in situ          |
| Ta       | Papillary noninvasive carcinoma    |
| T1       | On bimanual examination a freely mobile mass may be felt; this should not be felt after complete transurethral resection of the lesion and/or there is papillary carcinoma without microscopic invasion beyond the lamina propria |
| T2       | On bimanual examination there is induration of the bladder wall, which is mobile. There is no residual induration after complete transurethral resection of the lesion and/or there is microscopic invasion of superficial muscle of bladder |
| T3       | On bimanual examination there is induration or a nodular mobile mass is palpable in the bladder wall which persists after transurethral resection |
| T3a      | Microscopic invasion of deep muscle |
3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX  Not assessed
M0  No (known) distant metastasis
M1  Distant metastasis present
     Specify __________________________
     Specify sites according to the following notations:

     Pulmonary - PUL
     Osseous - OSS
     Hepatic - HEP
     Brain - BRA
     Lymph Nodes - LYM
     Bone Marrow - MAR
     Pleura - PLE
     Skin - SKI
     Eye - EYE
     Other - OTH

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
     Specify ______

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

The predominant cancer is a transitional cell cancer. Grading of the tumor is as follows.

6.1 Tumor Grade (G)

G1  Well-differentiated
G2  Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
**DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING**

Patient Identification
Name ___________________________
Address _________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number __________
Hospital or Clinic Address _________
Age _____ Sex _____ Race _______

**ONCOLOGY RECORD**

Anatomic Site of Cancer ______________
Histologic Cell Type __________________
Grade ______________________________
Time of Classification* cTNM _____ sTNM _____ pTNM _____ rTNM _____ aTNM _____
Date of Classification __________________

**SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — BLADDER**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>INA†</th>
<th>Antecedent</th>
<th>Dates</th>
<th>Current</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hematuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other (specify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nonmalignant Disease**

- GU ___ End/Met __ CV ___ Resp __ Allergy __ GI __

**Clinical Extent**

- Intravenous urogram
- Hydronephrosis
- Hydroureter
- Nonfunctioning kidney
- Not done

**Cystoscopy**

Site (indicate on diagrams)
No. of tumors: 1, 2, 3, 4, >4
Size, cm (circle largest): 1, 2, 3, 4, >4

**Bimanual Examination**

- Anesthesia
- Induration
- Mass
- Mobile
- Fixed to pelvic wall and/or invading abdominal wall
- Invading neighboring structures (specify)

**Treatment**

- None
- Surgical
  - Transurethral resection
  - Transvesical (specify)
  - Segmental resection
  - Urinary diversion
  - Cystectomy

**Radiotherapy**

- Site
  - External
  - Intersitial
  - Other (specify)

**Chemotherapy**

- Topical
- Systemic
- Other (specify)
- Unknown

**Purpose of Prior Treatment**

- Curative [ ]
- Palliative [ ]
- Unknown [ ]

**Classification**

T _____ N _____ M _____

**Stage**

No stage grouping recommended

**Residual Tumor**

R __________

**Host — Performance Status (H)**

H _________ Scale used: AJC ___________ Zubrod ___________ Karnofsky ___________

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy
† Information not available.
OUTLINE AFFECTED AREAS AND INDICATE:

F = Flat (velvety) area suspicious of atypia or ca in situ
S = Sessile tumor
P = Papillary tumor
E = Bullous edema
X = Biopsy site

= Resection/fulguration

PATIENT'S MEDICAL RECORD
116
OUTLINE AFFECTED AREAS AND INDICATE

F - Flat (velvety) area suspicious of atypia or car-in-situ
S - Sessile tumor
P - Papillary tumor
E - Bullous edema
X - Biopsy site

- Resection/fulguration

PATIENT'S RIGHT WALL

PATIENT'S LEFT WALL
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
- The suffix "m" should be added to the appropriate T category to indicate multiple lesions. Papilloma is classified as "G0."

TX Minimum requirements cannot be met
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
TIS Sessile carcinoma in situ
Ta Papillary noninvasive carcinoma
T1 On bimanual examination a freely mobile mass may be felt; this should not be felt after complete transurethral resection of the lesion and/or there is papillary carcinoma without microscopic invasion beyond the lamina propria
T2 On bimanual examination there is induration of the bladder wall, which is mobile. There is no residual induration after complete transurethral resection of the lesion and/or there is microscopic invasion of superficial muscle of bladder
T3 On bimanual examination there is induration or a nodular mobile mass is palpable in the bladder wall which persists after transurethral resection
T3a Microscopic invasion of deep muscle
T3b Invasion through the full thickness of bladder wall
T4 Tumor fixed or invading neighboring structures and/or there is microscopic evidence of invasion of the prostate and in the other circumstances listed below at least muscle invasion
T4a Tumor invading substance of prostate, uterus, or vagina
T4b Tumor fixed to the pelvic wall and/or infiltrating the abdominal wall

Nodal Involvement (N)
The regional lymph nodes are the pelvic nodes just below the bifurcation of the common iliac arteries. The juxtaregional lymph nodes are the inguinal nodes, the common iliac, and para-aortic nodes.
NX Minimum requirements cannot be met
N0 No involvement of regional lymph nodes
N1 Involvement of a single homolateral regional lymph node
N2 Involvement of contralateral, bilateral, or multiple regional lymph nodes
N3 There is a fixed mass on the pelvic wall with a free space between this and the tumor
N4 Involvement of juxtaregional lymph nodes

Note: Subsequent data regarding the histologic assessment of the regional lymph nodes may be added to the N category thus: "N-" for nodes with no microscopic evidence of metastases, or "N+" for those with microscopic evidence of metastasis, for example, N0+, etc.

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL Bone Marrow - MAR
Osseous - OSS Pleura - PLE
Hepatic - HEP Skin - SKI
Brain - BRA Eye - EYE
Lymph Nodes - LYM Other - OTH

Note: Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology (p) is proved.

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Predominant cancer is a transitional cell cancer.

STAGE GROUPING
No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4
Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify __________________________

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H</th>
<th>Performance Status</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>70-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

118
The present stage and grade classification of cancer of the prostate has had general acceptance for many years and fortunately is quite amenable for corresponding to this proposed classification of the TNM system. The latter system has been developed to provide more uniform and increased usage for end-results reporting.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: Adenocarcinoma of the prostate usually arises within the true gland and rarely seems to begin in the benign hyperplastic enlargement that occurs around the prostatic urethra in older men. Pathologically, this cancer tends to be multifocal in origin and is more commonly found in the peripheral posterior portion of the gland and therefore clinically is highly amenable to early detection by rectal examination.

There is general agreement that the incidence of both clinical and latent carcinoma increases progressively with age but clinically this cancer is rarely diagnosed in men under 40 years of age. Outlining the size of the malignant prostate on a diagram (even when drawn on a plain surface) is valuable as there also appears to be a correlation of the size to the extent of the malignancy. Screening subjects for unsuspected prostatic cancer by cytologic studies of prostatic fluid is reported of little value because ducts from the area often are deranged and interpretation is difficult. Any induration that does not clear with conservative management should be considered suspicious for malignant change; the area of induration is accessible to at least percutaneous perineal biopsy or, as some prefer, transrectal needle biopsy. Transurethral biopsy ordinarily provides diagnosis in advanced prostatic cancer but its value in excluding early lesions that arise at some distance from the urethra is open to question. Many urologists are now advocating prostatic biopsy before any type of surgery for clinically benign prostatic disease is undertaken.

The grade of the prostatic cancer is often more important for the prognosis than the extent of its growth. The histopathologic grading of these tumors is complex because there are cells and glandular and stomal elements to consider. Also these cancers frequently have more than one type of pathology in specimens examined. This TNM classification allows either an anaplasia or a pattern type of grading method to be used.

One of the reasons that cancer of the prostate is felt to have so reproducible an age curve for the male population for clinical carcinoma and a long latent period is that few lymphatic channels can be found within the gland.

The scientific basis for separating the T1, T2, and T3 lesions is that lymphatics are noticeable in the prostatic capsule and more so in the perivesical spaces. Most primary lesions first invade the prostatic capsule and then take the path of least resistance along the ejaculatory ducts into the space between the seminal vesicles and the bladder. The growth of the tumor outside the prostate is usually along the perivesicle fascia rather than directly into the seminal vesicles. If the local lesion has invaded the seminal vesicle area extensively, then the probability that the regional nodes will be involved is at least 75%.

Clinically, however, induration palpable in the seminal vesicle region may prove histologically to be inflammation and not tumor extension. Early invasion of cancers from the prostate directly into the bladder wall, distally into the membranous urethra, or along the vas deferens beyond the seminal vesicles is rare. The rectum also is rarely involved until late because of the barrier of Denonvilliers' fascia, composed of obliterated layers of the peritoneal cavity that extend downward between the prostate gland and rectum.

Ureteral obstruction, however, is not an uncommon occurrence before metastatic spread of the disease. It can be caused by bladder outlet obstruction from the primary lesion, by extension of the tumor behind the bladder, or by constriction of involved regional nodes. Periodic urogram or renogram studies may detect its occurrence and appropriate treatment can be planned.
1.2 Nodal Stations: Regional or first station nodes are (1) obturator nodes found in the region of the fossa laterally below the symphysis pubis, (2) hypogastric nodes located at the bifurcation of the common iliac vessels adjacent to the course of the obturator nerve, (3) the external iliac nodes principally located along these vessels close to the inguinal ligament, and (4) the lateral sacral and pararectal nodes within the pelvis. Juxtaregional or second station nodes are the common iliac and the para-aortic and paracaval lymph nodes.

Note: Physical examination or lymphangiography rarely demonstrates the regional nodes that drain lymphatics from the prostate gland. Operative exploration, therefore, is being encouraged to better determine the extent of nodal involvement before radical surgery or curative doses of radiation therapy are implemented.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread to bones via lymphatic or venous channels is the most common route. These metastases are usually first seen in the pelvis followed by lesions in the lumbothoracic spine, ribs, and heads of the femur and humerus. Bony lesions are usually blastic in nature but may be mixed or lytic in high-grade prostatic cancers. Later metastases tend to spread to the chest, sometimes to the liver, and occasionally to the brain. An elevated blood acid phosphatase determination, especially the prostatic portion, is classified usually as evidence of metastases, although the behavior of the cancer indicates a prognosis not as grave as if there was evidence of other distant metastases. Some urologists like to obtain bone marrow studies to further rule out metastatic disease before performing radical surgery. If juxtaregional nodes appear to be involved, then biopsy of the left scalene node is recommended before beginning irradiation and/or chemotherapy.

Clinical examination, lymphangiography, and/or urography are desirable to detect nodal involvement. Clinical examination, chest x-ray, skeletal studies, and acid phosphatase determinations on two or more occasions will aid in establishing the presence of metastasis. If juxtaregional nodes appear involved, scalene node biopsy is recommended.

Note: Newer diagnostic modalities (e.g., computerized body isotope scans) may be subsequently used to provide the minimum required information.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Retropitoneal exploration with biopsy of regional or first station nodes or juxtaregional or second station nodes, if appropriate, is necessary. This is being encouraged to better evaluate the extent of prostatic cancer as regional nodes are usually not detectable by physical examination or lymphangiography.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Pathologic material may be obtained for evaluation from (1) a radical prostatectomy, which usually means a prostatovesiculectomy that may be performed through a retropubic, perineal, or a transsacral approach, (2) a total cystectomy that includes a prostatovesiculectomy, particularly if the prostatic malignancy has invaded the bladder wall, (3) an anterior exenteration in which the only major structure left in the pelvis is the rectum, or (4) a regional lymph node dissection. The latter may be an extensive methodical attempt to remove all regional nodes or a limited dissection of those obviously overwhelmed by a tumor process.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Histopathologic biopsy is required for confirmation of local recurrence following surgical or radiation treatment. A reevaluation for metastatic disease is highly desirable at this time for improved end-results reporting.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TX Minimum requirements cannot be met
T0 No tumor palpable; includes incidental findings of cancer in a biopsy or operative specimen. Assign all such cases a G, N, or M category

T1 Tumor intracapsular surrounded by normal gland

T2 Tumor confined to gland, deforming contour, and invading capsule, but lateral sulci and seminal vesicles are not involved

T3 Tumor extends beyond capsule with or without involvement of lateral sulci and/or seminal vesicles

T4 Tumor fixed or involving neighboring structures. Add suffix (m) after "T" to indicate multiple tumors. (e.g., T2m)

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify __________________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

NX Minimum requirements cannot be met

N0 No involvement of regional lymph nodes

N1 Involvement of a single regional lymph node

N2 Involvement of multiple regional lymph nodes

N3 Free space between tumor and fixed pelvic wall mass

N4 Involvement of juxtaregional nodes

4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor

R1 Microscopic residual tumor

R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify __________________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

Almost always adenocarcinoma, grades variable.

6.1 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated

G2 Moderately well-differentiated

G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Identification</th>
<th>Institutional Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Hospital or Clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital or Clinic Number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age        Sex        Race</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ONCOLOGY RECORD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic Site of Cancer</th>
<th>Histologic Cell Type</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of Classification*</th>
<th>cTNM</th>
<th>sTNM</th>
<th>pTNM</th>
<th>rTNM</th>
<th>aTNM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date of Classification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — PROSTATE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Here</th>
<th>Elsewhere (specify)</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Rectal Exam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biopsy</td>
<td>(specify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiologic (specify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radiologic (specify)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biochemical (specify)</th>
<th>Other (specify)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Significant Symptomatic Associated Nonmalignant Disease(s)</th>
<th>CV</th>
<th>Resp.</th>
<th>GU</th>
<th>GI</th>
<th>Met/End</th>
<th>GNS</th>
<th>Mus/Skel</th>
<th>Allergy</th>
<th>Other (specify)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other Malignant Disease</th>
<th>Site</th>
<th>Extent (specify as to T N M IN A)</th>
<th>Death Date</th>
<th>From Tumor</th>
<th>With tumor but from other causes</th>
<th>No tumor but from other causes</th>
<th>IA T</th>
<th>Autopsy date</th>
<th>IN A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purposet of Treatment</th>
<th>Curative</th>
<th>Palliative</th>
<th>IN A</th>
<th>Death Date</th>
<th>From Tumor</th>
<th>With tumor but from other causes</th>
<th>No tumor but from other causes</th>
<th>IA</th>
<th>Autopsy date</th>
<th>IN A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host Physical State</th>
<th>H or %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>IN A</th>
<th>Antecedent</th>
<th>Current</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematuria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nocturia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain from cancer</td>
<td>(specify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gynecmastia: Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormone</td>
<td>(specify)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchiectomy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TUR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enucleation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryosurgery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radical</td>
<td>(specify approach)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvic lymphadenectomy</td>
<td>(specify type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other surgery</td>
<td>(specify type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation (curative) amount</td>
<td>External</td>
<td>Intertitial</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No stage grouping recommended</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regional or first station nodes are: (1) obturator, (2) hypogastric, (3) external iliac, and (4) lateral sacral and pararectal.
Juxta-regional or second station nodes are common iliac and para-aortic.

Residual Tumor

R

Host — Performance Status (H)

H | Scale used: AJC | Zubrod | Karnofsky |

*CTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.

*INA = Information not available.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
TX Minimum requirements cannot be met
T0 No tumor palpable; includes incidental findings of cancer in a biopsy or operative specimen.
T1 Tumor intracapsular surrounded by normal gland
T2 Tumor confined to gland, deforming contour, and invading capsule, but lateral sulci and seminal vesicles are not involved
T3 Tumor extends beyond capsule with or without involvement of lateral sulci and/or seminal vesicles
T4 Tumor fixed or involving neighboring structures. Add suffix (m) after "T" to indicate multiple tumors (e.g., T2m)

Nodal Involvement (N)
NX Minimum requirements cannot be met
N0 No involvement of regional lymph nodes
N1 Involvement of a single regional lymph node
N2 Involvement of multiple regional lymph nodes
N3 Free space between tumor and fixed pelvic wall mass
N4 Involvement of juxta-regional nodes

Note: If N category is determined by lymphangiography or isotope scans, insert "1" or "i" between "N" and appropriate number (e.g., N12 or N2). If nodes are histologically positive after surgery, add "+"; if negative, add "-".

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify
Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

Note: Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology (p) is proved.

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Almost always adenocarcinoma, grades variable

STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

GRADE

Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H0</th>
<th>Normal activity</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H1</th>
<th>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>70-80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H2</th>
<th>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</th>
<th>50-60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H3</th>
<th>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</th>
<th>30-40</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H4</th>
<th>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</th>
<th>10-20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TESTIS
This classification is designed for cancers of the body of the testis principally arising from germ cells and has been developed to provide more uniform and increased usage for end-results reporting. Several classifications are currently being used based on the histopathology than on the extent of these malignancies. The former appears to have much more importance in the prognosis than the latter whether the tumors develop from totipotential germ cells in a seminoma or in a nonseminoma direction. This proposed TNM classification, however, tends to follow the staging of these other classifications and includes documentation of the cell types and grade.

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: The testes are composed of convoluted seminiferous tubules with a stroma containing functional endocrine interstitial cells. Both are encased in a dense barrier capsule, the tunica albuginea, with fibrous septa extending into and separating the testes into lobules. The tubules converge and exit at the mediastinum of the testis into the rete testis and efferent ducts, which join a single tubule. This tubule, the epididymis, is noticeably coiled outside the upper and lower pole of the testicle then joins a muscular conduit, the vas deferens, which accompanies the vessels and lymphatic channels of the spermatic cord. The testis is surrounded by a remnant of the peritoneal cavity, the tunica vaginalis, and hydroceles are associated with approximately 10% of testicular tumors.

Cancer from the germ cells of the testis usually develops during the years of greatest sexual activity. Many authorities feel that the descended testis has a greater tendency to undergo carcinomatous change, even after orchiopexy has been performed. The characteristics and the amount of the tumor may produce endocrine effects including gynecomastia and altered laboratory determinations.

The major route for local extension is through the lymphatic channels emerging from the mediastinum of the testis and coursing through the spermatic cord. Occasionally the epididymis will be invaded early and then the external iliac nodes may become involved. Involvement of the rete testis without evidence of further extension may well be a T1 lesion in behavior, but for the present it will continue to be classified as a T3 lesion along with the involvement of the epididymis. If there has been previous scrotal or inguinal surgery with invasion of the scrotal wall, though this is rare, then the lymphatic spread may be to inguinal nodes.

The histopathology of the individual testicular tumor, as noted above, appears to be more important than its extent. Much more information is needed relative to the prognosis of mixed lesions, which occur in at least 20% of these malignancies. “Burned out” primary lesions associated with abdominal masses are rare.

1.2 Nodal Stations: The spermatic lymphatic collecting ducts on the right side tend to follow the vascular components of the cord and drain into the paracaval lymph nodes in the area where the vein enters the vena cava and the artery arises from the aorta. The spermatic lymphatic collecting ducts on the left side also tend to follow the vascular components of the cord and drain into the para-aortic nodes in the region where the spermatic and the inferior mesenteric arteries arise off the aorta and also into the nodes of the renal hilum in the region where the spermatic vein joins the left renal vein. Spread of the tumor into contralateral regional or first station nodes of the area occurs in at least 20% of cases. When there has been previous inguinal or scrotal surgery, inguinal nodes also are considered as regional or first station nodes. Juxtaregional or second station nodes are those of the pelvis and mediastinal and supraclavicular regions. The distinction of juxtaregional nodal involvement from metastatic sites for testicular tumors is meaningful for end-results reporting of the effects of radiation therapy.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: Distant spread of testicular tumors is most common to the lung followed by metastases to the liver, viscera and bones.
2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging:
Clinical examination and radical orchiectomy (which in this case is considered as a biopsy) are required to detect primary tumor. Clinical examination, lymphangiography, and/or urography are desirable to detect nodal involvement. Chest plate and biochemical tests, if available (e.g., human chorionic gonadotropin and, for nonseminomatous tumors, alpha-fetal protein), are desirable.

Note: New diagnostic modalities (e.g., computerized body isotope scans) may be subsequently used to provide the minimum required information.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Exploration with biopsy of regional or first station nodes or juxtaregional or second station nodes, if appropriate. (Note: Radical orchiectomy with carcinoma of the testis is considered as the primary tumor biopsy and is not used for surgical-evaluative assessment in this TNM classification.) Surgical exploration is becoming more widely utilized in cases of testicular tumors to determine if regional nodes are positive before proceeding with radical retroperitoneal node dissections or with irradiation of the mediastinum.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Pathologic material may be obtained for evaluation from (1) radical orchiectomy, (2) regional or juxtaregional node biopsies, and (3) retroperitoneal node dissections whether performed bilaterally or unilaterally.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: A histopathologic biopsy is required for confirmation of local recurrence following surgical or radiation treatment. Reevaluation for metastatic disease is highly desirable at the time of the positive biopsy.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

T0 No evidence of primary tumor

T1 Limited to body of testis

T2 Extends beyond the tunica albuginea

T3 Involvement of the rete testis or epididymis

T4a Invasion of spermatic cord

T4b Invasion of scrotal wall

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

NX Minimum requirements cannot be met

N0 No evidence of involvement of regional lymph nodes

N1 Involvement of a single homolateral regional lymph node which, if inguinal, is mobile

N2 Involvement of contralateral or bilateral or multiple regional lymph nodes which, if inguinal, are mobile

N3 Palpable abdominal mass present or fixed inguinal lymph nodes

N4 Involvement of juxtaregional nodes

Note: If N category is determined by lymphography or isotope scans, insert "1" or "i" between "N" and appropriate number (e.g., N12 or Ni2). If nodes are histologically positive after surgery, add "+"; if negative, add "−".

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify ______________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH
4.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0  No residual tumor
R1  Microscopic residual tumor
R2  Macroscopic residual tumor
    Specify ________________________

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is currently recommended.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

Cell Types — These can be divided into seminomatous and nonseminomatous tumors. The latter can be divided into teratoma, teratocarcinoma, embryonal cell carcinoma, and choriocarcinoma. Mixtures of these types are to be denoted. Lymphomas are excluded. Reference to the WHO nomenclature and classification is recommended.

6.1 Tumor Grade (G)

G1  Well-differentiated
G2  Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ________________________ Institutional Identification

Address ______________________
Hospital or Clinic ______________________

Hospital or Clinic Number ______________________
Age _______ Sex _______ Race _______

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer ______________________ Histologic Cell Type ______________________

Grade ______________________

Time of Classification* cTNM _______ sTNM _______ pTNM _______ rTNM _______ aTNM _______

Date of Classification __________

Diagnosis Here ______ Elsewhere (specify) _________ Date ___________ INAt

Orchiectomy (specify) _________ Biopsy of testes _______ Node biopsy (specify) _________ Scrotal

_____ Inguinal/Cord _____ Biochemical (specify) _________ Other (specify) _______

Significant Symptomatic Associated Nonmalignant Disease(s) CV ______ Resp. ______ GU ______ GI

_____ Met/End ____ GNS ______ Mus/Skel ____ Allergy _____ Other (specify) ______

Other Malignant Disease Site ______ Extent (specify as to T _____ N _____ M _____)

INAt _______

Purpose of Treatment Curative _____ Palliative _______ INAt ; Death Date ______

From tumor _____ With tumor but from other causes _______ No tumor but from other causes

_____ INAt ; Autopsy date ______ INAt ______

Host Physical State H ______ or % ______

Symptoms
Pain (specify) ___________ INAt Antecedent Current

Weight loss ___________
Gynecomastia ___________
Testes ever undescended ___________
Surgical history ___________

Orchiectomy ___________
Inguinal ___________
Scrotal ___________
Other ___________

(specify) ___________

Dates
Pain (specify) ___________

Weight loss ___________
Gynecomastia ___________
Testes ever undescended ___________
Surgical history ___________

Orchiectomy ___________
Inguinal ___________
Scrotal ___________
Other ___________

(specify) ___________

TREATMENT

None ___________

Surgical (outline on diagram)

Orchiectomy ___________

Lymphadenectomy ___________
Route (specify) ___________
Laterality (specify) ___________
Para-aortic (specify) ___________
Other (specify) ___________

Radiotherapy (curative)

Site ___________

Amount ___________

Radiotherapy (palliative)

Site ___________

Amount ___________

Chemotherapy

(specify) ___________

Other (e.g., immunotherapy) ___________

(specify) ___________

Regional or first station nodes are: (1) para-aortic and paracaval, (2) renal hilar, and (3) inguinal (after previous scrotal/inguinal surgery).

Juxtaregional or second station nodes are: (4) and (5) intrapelvic nodes, (6) mediastases, and (7) supraclavicular.

Classification
T _____ N _____ M _____

Stage
No stage grouping recommended
Residual Tumor
R
Host — Performance Status (H)
H Scale used: AJC Zubrod Karnofsky

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
INA = Information not available.

DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION
Primary Tumor (T)
TX Minimum requirements cannot be met (in the absence of orchietomy, TX must be used)
T0 No evidence of primary tumor
T1 Limited to body of testis
T2 Extends beyond the tunica albuginea
T3 Involvement of the rete testis or epididymis
T4a Invasion of spermatic cord
T4b Invasion of scrotal wall

Nodal Involvement (N)
NX Minimum requirements cannot be met
N0 No evidence of involvement of regional lymph nodes
N1 Involvement of a single homolateral regional lymph node which, if inguinal, is mobile
N2 Involvement of contralateral or bilateral or multiple regional lymph nodes which, if inguinal, are mobile
N3 Palpable abdominal mass present or fixed inguinal lymph nodes
N4 Involvement of juxtagenital nodes

Note: If N category is determined by lymphography or isotope scans, insert "1" or "1" between "N" and appropriate number (e.g., N12 or N1). If nodes are histologically positive after surgery, add "+", if negative, add "-".

Distant Metastasis (M)
MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present
Specify ___

Specify sites according to the following notations:
Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
LYMPH NODES - LYM
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

Note: Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology (p) is proven.

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Cell Types — These can be divided into seminomatous and nonseminomatous tumors. The latter can be divided into teratoma, teratocarcinoma, embryonal carcinoma, and choriocarcinoma. Mixtures of these types are to be denoted. Lymphomas are excluded. Reference to the WHO nomenclature and classification is recommended.

STAGE GROUPING
No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4
Residual Tumor (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify ___

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host
H0 Normal activity
H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self
H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance
H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed
H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization

ECOG/ Zubrod scale Karnofsky scale (%)
0 90-100
1 70-80
2 60-80
3 50-65
4 40-50
5 30-40
6 20-30
7 10-20
8 1-10
STAGING OF MALIGNANT MELANOMA

In adopting a classification and staging system for malignant melanoma, the American Joint Committee has utilized the work of Clark, McGovern, Breslow, and many others.

1.0 CLINICAL PATHOLOGIC CLASSIFICATION

1.1 Clinical and Histologic Types of Malignant Melanoma

a. Malignant melanoma, lentigo maligna type: This refers to melanoma that develops within Hutchinson melanotic freckle. It grows radially, producing complex colored, highly distinctive clinical lesions. After this radial growth phase, the cells in focal areas penetrate deeper into the dermis and this is referred to as the vertical growth phase.

b. Malignant melanomas, with radial growth phase of the radial (superficial) spreading type: This is also characterized by a biphasic growth pattern and about 70% of all cutaneous melanomas are of this type. Whereas the proliferating melanocytes of the radial growth phase of melanoma of the lentigo maligna (Hutchinson) type are confined to the basilar regions of the epidermis, the melanocytes of the radial growth phase of malignant melanoma of the radial (superficial) spreading type essentially grow in the epidermis and invade the papillary dermis, usually in a pagetoid fashion.

c. Malignant melanoma, nodular type (without intraepidermal growth): This has no radial growth phase. Such a lesion is usually convex and is always palpable due to its growth elevation above the level of the adjacent normal skin.

d. Malignant melanoma, unclassified: This is a term used to denote a melanoma for which the radial growth phase cannot or has not been assigned to the aforementioned types.

Most melanomas fall into one of these categories. However, there are occasional malignant melanomas which arise in either a giant hairy nevus, or a blue nevus, or which have a special location such as volar-subungual, or which arise from oral, nasopharyngeal, conjunctival, vaginal, or anal mucous membranes. Melanomas may rarely arise from a visceral site or appear without a demonstrable primary lesion. All of these variations should be specifically coded separately.

Although the available data suggest the importance of the depth and thickness of invasion as a prognostic factor, the Committee has received many comments expressing reservations about the ultimate significance of some of the histologic types. It is true that lentigo maligna (Hutchinson's type) appears to have more of a favorable prognosis at early stages of invasion, but the wisdom of separating the radial (superficial) spreading type from the nodular type was questioned. While it was recognized that they are distinct morphologic types with perhaps different biologic implications, the survivals were similar when the tumor extended beyond the papillary dermis (level III or deeper). The unfortunate term "superficial spreading" was generally thought to be misleading since it continues to be construed as a tumor with superficial invasion which it is not. Such an interpretation has led to confusion and patient undertreatment. The Committee therefore suggests the use of the term malignant melanoma with radial growth phase of the radial spreading type.

The American Joint Committee has attempted to embrace the nomenclature devised by the working committees of WHO. In classifying and staging malignant melanoma, those lesions with an adjacent intraepidermal component or radial growth phase of the radial spreading type may be combined with malignant melanoma without an adjacent intraepidermal component (nodular type) and may be coded "melanoma, unclassified."

There is an emerging trend to place great emphasis upon the measured thickness of malignant cellular invasion in micrometers, irrespective of the actual level of invasion. Until it is shown that level or measured thickness or some yet unrecognized criteria is most accurate, it is recommended that all lesions be recorded with both level and thickness of invasion.

2.0 HISTOLOGY

2.1 Primary Site: The skin is divided into five levels corresponding to the five levels of invasion: The first level is not cancer and is included only because it is a distinct histotanatomic layer of the skin.
Level I (epidermis to epidermal-dermal interface): Lesions involving the epidermis only have been designated Level I. These lesions are considered to be “atypical melanocytic hyperplasia” and will not be included in the staging of malignant melanoma for they do not represent a malignant lesion.

Level II (papillary dermis): Invasion of the papillary dermis, but not reaching the papillary-recticular dermal interface

Level III (papillary-recticular dermis interface): Invasion involving the full thickness of, and filling and expanding, the papillary dermis; abutting upon, but not penetrating, the reticular dermis

Level IV (reticular dermis): Invasion into the reticular dermis, but not into the subcutaneous tissue

Level V (subcutaneous tissue): Invasion through the reticular dermis into the subcutaneous tissue

2.2 Thickness of invasion into the skin is recorded as an actual measurement as determined by the ocular micrometer measured from the outermost granular layer to the greatest depth of penetration. Actual measurement is to be recorded, but for staging it will be categorized:
   a. Less than 0.75 mm
   b. 0.75 to 1.5 mm
   c. Greater than 1.51 mm to 3.0 mm
   d. Greater than 3.0 mm

2.3 Regional Nodes: The regional nodes are related to the region of the body in which the tumor is located: such first station nodes are:
   a. For head and face: preauricular, upper cervical, submaxillary
   b. For neck and upper chest wall: cervical, supraclavicular
   c. For chest wall generally: anterior and posterior; and for arms: axillary
   d. For hand and upper extremity below the elbow: epitrochlear
   e. For the abdominal wall: anterior and posterior; and for proximal lower extremities: inguinal nodes
   f. For the feet and below the knees: popliteal

2.4 Metastatic Sites: Melanomas metastasize widely and, in addition to the skin, subcutaneous tissues, and lymph nodes, commonly involve the liver, bone, lung, brain, and viscera.

3.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: A careful clinical examination, inspection for tumor size, ulceration, and nodularity, inspection of the surrounding skin and subcutaneous tissue for satellites and intransit metastases leading toward the regional lymph node-bearing areas and other suspicious skin lesions, and palpation of the regional nodes are essential. Chest films and hemograms are required, and blood chemistry profiles are encouraged. Other radiographic and radiisotopic procedures are optional depending on clinical presentation.

3.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging (intraoperative): Rarely utilized.

3.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Evaluation of the entire primary tumor is always advised and rather than just a wedge or punch biopsy, the entire thickness of the skin is needed for accurately classification. Regional nodes should be meticulously evaluated if made available with the specimen.

3.4 Retreatment Staging: Any recurrence or metastatic lesion should be biopsied for confirmation if possible. A complete metastatic workup is advised.

4.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

4.1 Primary Tumor (T)
The level of invasion and the thickness of penetration determine the T1 to T4 classification. For example, a thin-skinned eyelid lesion at level IV measures only 0.70 mm of invasion and is classified T3. A thin-skinned lesion on the back of the neck at level II measures 2.8 mm of invasion and would also be classified T3.

   T1 Invasion of papillary dermis (L-II) and/or less than 0.75 mm thickness
T2 Papillary-reticular dermis interface (L-III) and/or 0.75 to 1.5 mm thickness
T3 Reticular dermis (L-IV) and/or 1.51 to 3.0 mm thickness
T4 Subcutaneous tissue (L-V) and/or greater than 3 mm thickness
T1a, T2a, T3a, T4a: Satellite(s) within immediate or regional area of the primary lesion
T1b, T2b, T3b, T4b: Intransit metastasis directed toward lymph node-draining basin

5.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor
Specify ________________

6.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I
Any T N0 M0
Localized to area or site of origin. Invasion into the papillary dermis (level II) to a maximum depth into the papillary-reticular interface (level III), but which does not penetrate the reticular dermis and/or a maximum thickness measurement of 1.5 mm

Stage II
Any T, Ta, Tb, N0 or N1, M0
Invasion to a maximum depth of the reticular dermis or subcutaneous tissue (Level IV and V) and/or a thickness measurement of 1.5 mm or more. Regional spread or local satellite(s) directed toward or to the first nodal basin

Stage III
Any T, Ta, or Tb, Any N, M1 or M2
Any T, Ta, or Tb, N1 or N2, Any M
Disseminated spread to lymph nodes other than first station nodes or to skin (specify area) and subcutaneous tissue or to viscera (specify organs)

7.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

7.1 Types of malignant melanoma: lentigo maligna (Hutchinson’s), with adjacent intraepidermal component of radial spreading type (superficial spreading), without adjacent intraepidermal component (nodular), and unclassified

7.2 Tumor Grade (G)
G1 Well-differentiated
G2 Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Specify sites according to the following notations:
- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)
8.0 REFERENCES


DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name ____________________________
Address __________________________
Hospital or Clinic Number __________
Age _____ Sex _____ Race __________

Institutional Identification
Hospital or Clinic ___________________
Address __________________________

ONCOLOGY RECORD
Anatomic Site of Cancer ______________
Histologic Cell Type __________________
Grade _____________________________
Time of Classification * ________________
rTNM ___________ pTNM ___________ cTNM ___________ sTNM ___________
Date of Classification _________________
aTNM ___________

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — MALIGNANT MELANOMA

Type of Lesion
Depth of invasion level I (not a melanoma and further characterization is not necessary) _____
level II _____ level III _____ level IV _____ level V _____
Other description
Actual thickness (mm) __________________________
Site of primary lesion (check diagram)
Extent of primary lesion (include all pigmentation) __________________________
Size in greatest diameter _______ cm

Characteristics
Ulceration _________________________
Other

Regional Spread
Satellite lesions ______________________
Regional nodes ______________________

Distant Metastasis: Yes _____ No _____
Organ(s) ____________________________

Classification
T ______ N ______ M ______

Stage
Treatment (as shown) __________________________

Residual Tumor
R _______

Host — Performance Status (H)
H ______ Scale used: AJC _______ Zubrod _______ Karnofsky _______

LEVEL OF INVASION
Primary Site (T): The skin is divided into five levels corresponding to the five levels of invasion
Level I (epidermis to epidermal-dermal interface): Lesions involving the epidermis only. These lesions are considered to be “atypical melanocytic hyperplasia” and will not be included in the staging of malignant melanoma. Level I is included only for microscopic completeness and is not considered as cancer.
Level II (papillary dermis): Invasion of the papillary dermis, but not reaching the papillary-reticular dermal interface
Level III (papillary-reticular dermis interface): Invasion involving the full thickness of, and filling and expanding, the papillary dermis; abutting on but not penetrating, the reticular dermis
Level IV (reticular dermis): Invasion into the reticular dermis, but not into the subcutaneous tissue
Level V (subcutaneous tissue): Invasion through the reticular dermis into the subcutaneous tissue

Thickness of Invasion: The thickness of invasion into the skin is recorded as an actual measurement as determined by the ocular micrometer reading.

Regional Nodes (N): The regional nodes are related to the region of the body in which the tumor is located; such first station nodes are:
a. For head and face: preauricular, upper cervical, submaxillar
b. For neck and upper chest wall: cervical, supraclavicular
c. For chest wall generally: anterior and posterior; and for arms: axillary
d. For hand and upper extremity below the elbow: epitrochlear
e. For the abdominal wall: anterior and posterior; and for proximal lower extremities: inguinal nodes
f. For the feet and below the knees: popliteal

*CTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)
- **T1** Invasion of papillary dermis, (L-II) and/or < 75 mm thickness
- **T2** Papillary-reticular dermis interface (L-III) and/or 0.75 to 1.5 mm thickness
- **T3** Reticular dermis, (L-IV) and/or 1.51 to 3.0 mm thickness
- **T4** Subcutaneous tissue (L-V) and/or >3.0 mm thickness
- **T1a, T2a, T3a, or T4a**: Satellite(s)
- **T1b, T2b, T3b, or T4b**: In transit metastasis extending toward regional lymph nodes

Nodal Involvement (N)
- **N0**: No regional lymph node involvement
- **N1**: Regional lymph node involvement of first station nodes only
- **N2**: Lymph node involvement other than first station nodes

Distant Metastasis (M)
- **Mx**: Not assessed
- **M0**: No (known) distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis present

Specify

Specify sites according to the following notations:
- Pulmonary - PUL
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Osseous - OSS
- Pleura - PLE
- Hepatic - HEP
- Skin - SKI
- Brain - BRA
- Eye - EYE
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Other - OTH

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Types of malignant melanoma: lentigo maligna (Hutchinson’s), with adjacent intraepidermal component of radial spreading type (superficial spreading), without adjacent intraepidermal component (nodular), unclassified

GRADE

Well differentiated, moderately well differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

STAGE GROUPING

Stage I Localized to area or site of origin;
- Any T, N0, M0

Stage II Regional spread or local satellite(s) directed toward or to first nodal basin
- Any Ta, Tb, N0 or N1, M0

Stage III Disseminated spread to lymph nodes other than first station nodes or to skin (specify area) and subcutaneous tissue or to viscera (specify organs)
- Any T, Ta, or Tb, Any N, M1 or M2
- Any T, Ta, or Tb, N1 or N2, Any M

Residual Tumor (R)
- **R0**: No residual tumor
- **R1**: Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2**: Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify

ECOG/ Zubrod scale  Karnofsky scale (%)
- H0 Normal activity 0 90-100
- H1 Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self 1 70-80
- H2 Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance 2 50-60
- H3 Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed 3 30-40
- H4 Bedridden — may need hospitalization 4 10-20
STAGING OF HODGKIN'S DISEASE
AND NON-HODGKIN'S LYMPHOMAS

The pathologic classification of Hodgkin's disease and of the non-Hodgkin's malignant lymphomas developed by Rappaport, Lukes, Butler, Dorfman, and others is generally accepted and coming into general use. The anatomic staging system developed for Hodgkin's disease at the Ann Arbor conference has become a worldwide standard, too, and appears to be reasonably satisfactory for the lymphocytic and histiocytic lymphomas. The TNM system, however, is not a workable system for staging the malignant lymphomas. The site of origin of these diseases is usually occult, and there is no way to differentiate "T" from "N." In these entities the type of neoplastic cell(s), the degree of cellular differentiation, and the pattern of node involvement, that is, nodular (follicular) vs. diffuse proliferation, are often more important than anatomic considerations.

1.0 ANATOMY

Lymph Nodes (LYM): The major lymphatic structures include groups and chains of lymph nodes, the spleen (SPL), thymus, Waldeyer's ring, appendix, and Peyers patches. Minor lymphoid collections are widely dispersed in other viscera and tissues, such as the bone marrow, liver, skin, pulmonary parenchyma, pleurae, gonads, etc. Extramedial (E) lymphoid malignancies are those which arise in tissues away from the major lymphatic aggregates.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

The diagnosis of malignant lymphoma requires the biopsy of lymph nodes or of an extranodal lymphoid tumor.

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Staging generally involves the use of a sequence of clinical, radiologic, surgical, and histopathologic procedures designed to provide a sound basis for planning therapy. "Clinical-Diagnostic Staging" includes a carefully recorded medical history, physical examination, urinalysis, chest roentgenograms, blood chemistry determinations, a competent blood examination, and an aspiration biopsy of the bone marrow. Bilateral lower extremity lymphangiograms are usually necessary unless there is a contraindication of this procedure. Biopsy of acces-
sible extranodal primary tumors, such as in Waldeyer's ring, is desirable. Bilateral bone marrow biopsies from the iliac crest using the Jamshidi needle frequently obviate the need for bone marrow biopsy at laparotomy. Radioisotope scans of the spleen and liver, additional radiologic studies of the skeleton, and technetium 99m-labeled polyphosphate bone scans may be helpful in some instances. Gallium scans, ultrasound, and CAT scans are investigative procedures.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Nearly one-third of patients who appear to have stage I or II Hodgkin's disease with involvement of the cervical and/or mediastinal lymph nodes have occult disease in the spleen. About 25% of patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma present with evidence of abdominal disease which requires laparotomy for diagnosis and, in some of these patients, the spleen is not or cannot be removed. In many instances, laparotomy is necessary for biopsy of suspicious lymph nodes disclosed by lymphangiograms. Splenectomy may be necessary in Hodgkin's disease to identify microscopic foci of neoplasia. The liver may be biopsied by a percutaneous needle procedure, sometimes directed by peritoneoscopy, or by needle or wedge specimens obtained at laparotomy.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Occasionally an extranodal site of tumor is resected along the gastrointestinal tract which permits the examination of the entire specimen along with adjacent mesenteric lymph nodes. Involvement of tissues is indicated as + or –

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Suspected recurrence or relapses require biopsy confirmation. Patients may be restaged at this juncture using the procedures outlined above.

3.0 STAGING CLASSIFICATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Involvement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Involvement of a single lymph node region (I) or of a single extra lymphatic organ or site (I&lt;sub&gt;e&lt;/sub&gt;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| II    | Involvement of two or more lymph node regions (number to
be stated) on the same side of the diaphragm (IIa), or localized involvement of an extra-lymphatic organ or site and of one or more lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm (IIb).

Stage III Involvement of lymph node regions on both sides of the diaphragm (III) which may also be accompanied by localized involvement of extra-lymphatic organ or site (IIIa) or by involvement of the spleen (IIIb) or both (IIIc).

Stage IV Diffuse or disseminated involvement of one or more extra-lymphatic organs or tissues with or without associated lymph node enlargement. The reason for classifying the patient as stage IV is identified further by specifying sites according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

Systemic Symptoms. — Each stage is subdivided into "A" and "B" categories, "B" for those with defined general symptoms and "A" for those without. The "B" designation will be given to those patients with (1) unexplained loss of more than 10% of body weight in the six months before admission; (2) unexplained fever with temperatures above 38°C; (3) night sweats. Pruritus alone does not qualify for "B" classification, nor does a short febrile illness associated with a known infection. (Carbone PP, Kaplan HS, Musshoff K, et al: Report of the committee on Hodgkin's disease staging classification. Cancer Res 31:1860, 1971).

In reference to systemic "B" symptoms in Hodgkin's disease, there is divided opinion regarding pruritus. This symptom is hard to define quantitatively and uniformly, but when it is recurrent or otherwise unexplained, and ebbs and flows in parallel with disease activity, it may be the equivalent of a "B" symptom of major significance.

Patients with lymphocytic lymphomas often have remarkably few symptoms even though many node areas or extranodal sites are involved. An accurate assessment of the performance status (Karnofsky scale), with allowances being made for unrelated diseases, is most important in patients with early disease. Those with advanced or progressive disease may present with malaise, reduced exercise tolerance, weight loss, fever, and sweating.

4.0 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In dealing with extranodal disease in non-Hodgkin's lymphomas, the name of the organ or site, such as Waldeyer's ring, should be stipulated following the numeric designation of stage. The symbol "E" when used alone would, thus, signify only the direct extension of disease to an adjacent organ which will usually occur only in Hodgkin's disease.

The anatomic extent of disease in the malignant lymphomas is defined by an appropriate sequence of diagnostic procedures selected for a given disease in a particular individual. Forty to 85% of patients with lymphocytic lymphoma have readily demonstrable blood and/or bone marrow involvement. With appropriate hematologic studies, lymphangiography, and percutaneous needle biopsies of the liver when indicated, over 80% of these patients can be demonstrated to have stage IV disease without being subjected to laparotomy. In histiocytic lymphomas, occult foci of disease may occur in the abdomen and the incidence of blood and bone marrow involvement is considerably less. Laparotomy may be necessary in selected patients for optimal therapeutic planning.

On the basis of physical findings, roentgenographic observations, scans, and histologic and cytologic data, one eventually arrives at a designation of stage. There is always some variation, often with good reason, in the degree of completeness and adequacy of the data used for staging (see Data Form for Cancer Staging). In patients with Hodgkin's disease who appear to have stage IA or IIA disease by clinical staging with foci only above the diaphragm, splenic involvement can be demonstrated in one-third by splenectomy. In those who have enlarged lymph nodes in both cervical and inguinal regions, the standard group of studies on which staging can
be based should include biopsy of a lymph node, chest and skeletal roentgenograms, blood chemistry determinations, urinalysis, blood studies, and bone marrow biopsy. Lymphangiograms are always necessary unless there are contraindications to this procedure. Their importance should not be denied despite problems that may be involved in their interpretation. They are obviously a demonstration of gross anatomy and not histology. A “staging celiotomy” is not an adequate procedure if it is done without previous lymphangiography. The dye remains in the nodes for at least 4 to 6 months, often for 1 to 2 years, and changes in size and displacement can be followed serially by plain roentgenograms during this period.

Foci of lymphoreticular disease in the para-aortic region above the level of the second lumbar vertebra, in the porta hepatis, splenic hilum, mesentery, gut wall, and other sites in the abdomen cannot be demonstrated by lymphangiography or other noninvasive techniques. Laparotomy with splenectomy may be necessary to detect foci of disease in the spleen, to establish the etiology of splenomegaly, or to investigate equivocal lymphangiographic findings. Hypersplenism in patients who tolerate radiotherapy or chemotherapy poorly may be corrected by splenectomy, and at the same time liver and node biopsies obtained. In elderly patients, in many of those who have extensive or diffuse disease with “B” systemic symptoms, lymphocyte-depleted Hodgkin’s disease or recurrent histiocytic lymphoma, and in those in whom total nodal radiotherapy or cycles of multiagent chemotherapy will be given anyway, there is usually nothing to gain from laparotomy.

5.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

The scheme of classifying Hodgkin’s disease developed at the Rye Conference and that of Rappaport for the non-Hodgkin’s lymphomas should be generally adopted and followed meticulously. Descriptive terms used should be rigorously standardized, with all observers being aware that there is considerable variation in technical skill and in histologic interpretation in different institutions and localities. Questionable interpretations should be submitted to a panel of experts.

5.1 Hodgkin’s disease

Lymphocyte predominance
Nodular sclerosis
Mixed cellularity
Lymphocyte depletion
Unclassified

5.2 Non-Hodgkin’s Lymphomas

Nodular or Diffuse

Lymphocytic, well-differentiated
Lymphocytic, poorly differentiated
Mixed histiocytic-lymphocytic
Histiocytic
Histiocytic medullary reticulosus
Unclassifiable. Burkitt’s.

6.0 PERFORMANCE STATUS (Karnofsky Scale).
See Introduction

7.0 DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

This form serves as a reminder in acquiring and summarizing data regarding the classification and staging of malignant lymphomas, leading to a specification on the bottom line.

8.0 REFERENCES

1. Dollinger MR, Golbey RB, Karnofsky DA: Cancer chemotherapy. DM April, 1969, p 11

### DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name ___________________________</th>
<th>Date of Birth</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Hospital No.</th>
<th>Time of Staging</th>
<th>Clinical-Diagnostic</th>
<th>Surgical-Evaluative</th>
<th>Recurrence</th>
<th>□ Hodgkin's Disease</th>
<th>□ Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nodular sclerosis</td>
<td>Pruritus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lymphocyte predominance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mixed cellularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lymphocyte depletion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unclassified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>Pruritus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sweats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wt loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(10% in 6 mos)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Diagnostic Procedures (pretreatment studies done)

- P.E., blood exam
- Blood chemistry survey
- Chest x-ray
- Marrow aspiration
- Marrow biopsy
- Lymphangiograms
- I.V. pyelograms
- Inf vena cavogram
- Gl x-rays
- Liver/spleen scan
- Tomograms, chest
- Bone scans
- Liver biopsy, needle
- Liver biopsy, with peritoneoscopy
- Celiotomy with splenectomy, node and liver biopsies
- Other

#### Extent of Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Physical Findings</th>
<th>X-Ray Findings (including scans)</th>
<th>Biopsy Sites (+ or -)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waldeyer's ring</td>
<td>Rt.</td>
<td>Bil.</td>
<td>Rt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical nodes</td>
<td>Lt.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraclavicular nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraclavicular nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axillary nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediastinum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilar nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung parenchyma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inguinal-femoral nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Para-aortic nodes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others (or extra-nodal sites)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spleen</td>
<td>size, cm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver</td>
<td>size, cm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bones and Marrow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stage by Extent and Diagnostic Workup
I II III IV Clinical (node biopsy, chest x-ray, blood chemistry, blood and bone marrow examinations, lymphangiograms)
I II III IV Above plus laparotomy, splenectomy, and biopsies (specified)
I II III IV Laparotomy without splenectomy

Classification of Symptoms A B

CRITERIA OF PERFORMANCE STATUS (PS)
(Karnofsky Scale)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Able to carry on normal activity; no special care is needed</th>
<th>100% Normal; no complaints; no evidence of disease</th>
<th>Host Physical State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>90% Able to carry on normal activity; minor signs or symptoms of disease</td>
<td></td>
<td>H0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80% Normal activity with effort; some signs or symptoms of disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to work; able to live at home; care for most personal needs; a varying amount of assistance is needed</td>
<td>70% Cares for self; unable to carry on normal activity or to do active work</td>
<td>H1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60% Requires some assistance, but is able to care for most of his needs</td>
<td></td>
<td>H2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50% Requires much assistance and frequent medical care</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to care for self; requires equivalent of institutional or hospital care; disease may be progressing rapidly</td>
<td>40% Disabled; requires special care and assistance</td>
<td>H3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30% Severely disabled; hospitalization may be indicated although death not imminent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20% Very sick; hospitalization necessary; active supportive treatment necessary</td>
<td></td>
<td>H4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10% Moribund; fatal processes progressing rapidly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0% Dead</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

142
STAGING OF PRIMARY MALIGNANT BONE TUMORS

Primary malignant lesions of the bone present important problems of diagnosis and treatment. Vital to making a diagnosis are both interpretation of roentgenograms and analysis of histopathologic features of the disease. In clinically appraising a patient for therapy, it is necessary to know the natural history of the disease, the clinical characteristics, the extent of disease, the histopathologic features, and the influence a specific therapy may have on it.

The Task Force on Primary Malignant Bone Tumors developed a protocol to evaluate information for staging of bone tumors. A field trial was made using a significant number of case records from five different institutions, which led to the conclusion that, because an insufficient number of cases with roentgenograms were available, a retrospective analysis was worthless. In determining the extent of bone involvement and, often, in identifying the site of tumor origin, roentgenographic information proved critical, and only a few roentgenograms of involved bone were available for review in any of the selected centers where a significant number of malignant bone tumor cases were on file.

The protocol developed by the task force proved to be an excellent guide as to what information is needed for retrospective or prospective studies, or both, and its use is recommended as a data-collecting technique for obtaining information for whatever classification and staging may be considered.

The task force concluded that the future of the classification of primary malignant bone tumors lies in prospective studies and that establishing an accurate diagnosis with extent of disease is absolutely necessary for evaluating bone tumor classification and staging for end-results reporting. It is hoped that institutions having the capability and a large volume of bone tumors will use the data form so that at a future time information will become available that can be used in determining a recommended staging system.

It seems appropriate, however, to identify certain histopathologic classifications as examples and discuss their use in separating bone neoplasms into specific types that seem to follow a definite clinical course. An evaluation of the treatment of these specific types of tumor reflects the effectiveness of the therapy used.¹

Such classifications reflect the histologic tissue pattern that remains the decisive factor in the diagnostic interpretation of the neoplasm. In certain cases, however, judgment is based on the dominant histologic appearance of tissue taken from various parts of the lesion. In addition, the clinical findings may be of help, but the roentgenographic studies, often regarded as part of the gross pathologic picture, frequently afford important evidence as to the malignant or benign nature of the lesion. Laboratory studies are of little aid in diagnosing the average primary malignant bone tumor (an exception is multiple myeloma).

The pathologist, the surgeon, or the roentgenologist dealing with bone tumors should view the diagnostic problem not only from his standpoint but also from that of the other disciplines concerned.

No doubt, prospective clinical trials will be enhanced by more adequate case records and will permit a satisfactory clinical classification for staging and end-results reporting of primary malignant bone tumors in the future.

Instructions for use of protocol for classification of malignant bone tumors to aid in collecting and recording the necessary data are as follows:

The purpose of this study is to develop and test a method for a meaningful staging classification for primary malignant bone tumors. The malignant tumors qualifying for this study comprise all primary malignant tumors of skeletal tissues of the body. Extraskeletal malignant bone tumors are excluded.

For the correct interpretation of the collected data, it is necessary to have a description of the material supplied by each institution. In order to have this description, each abstractor should provide the following information completely.

¹Summaries of these classifications are appended after the data form as well as references.
Patient Identification and History. — It is important that the method of obtaining cases be specified by the abstractor. (Were the cases identified through the tumor registry, the record room, the departmental files in pathology or surgery? Were the roentgenograms and histopathologic findings reviewed?) Please note this information in the space provided for "Source of Case" in the abstract form.

All patients with histologically confirmed primary bone malignancy who received their first treatment in the reporting institution are to be included. Patients who had a previous biopsy (including excisional biopsy) elsewhere within an interval of 3 months and were then treated at the reporting institution are to be included.

Adequate follow-up information on the group of cases to be abstracted is essential, and every effort should be made to obtain such information, if possible. Any institution that is not able to provide current follow-up information on at least 90% of its cases should not participate in this study.

Date of Onset or Duration Prior to Admission: Do not include symptoms or other findings after the initiation of treatment (exception: histopathology).

Definition of Starting Time: In considering the definition of starting time for reporting of cancer survival and end results, the date of initiation of treatment is to be used as starting time for evaluation of therapy. Thus, the starting point from which survival rates are calculated is defined as the date, in treated patients, when first definitive tumor-directed treatment was commenced, and, in untreated patients, as the date on which it was decided that no tumor-directed treatment would be given. This definition is used since it will usually coincide with the date of clinical staging of the cancer. All dates in the treatment section of protocol are to be filled out if possible.

Initial Treatment: Include any treatment initiated within 4 months of initial diagnosis.

Clinical Findings. — Clinical findings are the clinical evaluation of the lesion at the time of initial workup in the hospital.

Location of Primary: See list of bones attached. Please indicate the specific bone involved in those locations where the bones are listed under the general anatomic classification such as metatarsal bone, etc. Also identify left as "L" and right as "R," when appropriate.

Tumor Size: List specific dimensions from palpation, if given.

Roentgenographic Findings. — Extent of Involvement: Extension beyond tissue of origin into surrounding periosteal zone or soft parts.

Specific Location Within Bone: Tumors should be specifically located as to the diaphysis, metaphysis, epiphysis, or combinations. Specify localization of the tumor as involving the proximal or distal end for long bones. If more than one area is involved (i.e., diaphysis and metaphysis), check each appropriate block. In certain instances in flat bones it will be necessary to define the location with reference to the proximity to the joint.

Pathologic Findings. — Record gross findings obtained at definitive surgery: size (three dimensions) and location (in long bone). Designate those lesions 5 cm or less from the joint line as proximal or distal.

Histologic Type. — There is an understandable variation in the terms used by the various pathologists in describing the histology of this group of lesions. The histologic types to be included are the following:

- Osteosarcoma
- Parosteal osteosarcoma
- Chondrosarcoma
- Fibrosarcoma
- Malignant giant cell tumor
- Primary reticulum cell sarcoma (lymphosarcoma)
- Ewing's sarcoma
- Other — specify (by diagnosis)

Terms such as periosteal sarcoma, undifferentiated round cell sarcoma, hemangiosarcoma (or its synonyms), "adamantinoma," etc. should be entered as given in the pathologic reports where they differ from the classification given above. Include undifferentiated bone sarcoma under "Other." Do not include chordoma of bone or myeloma.

At times there is some variation in the diagnostic label that a particular neoplasm is given during its course. If the reporting institution changes its histologic diagnosis during the course of treatment, all diagnoses should be
listed with dates. The task force recommends that the *Histologic Typing of Primary Bone Tumors and Tumor-Like Lesions*, published by the World Health Organization, Geneva, 1972, be used for specific definitions of histologic typing.

**Recurrence or Metastasis at Follow-Up.** — The abstractor should sign the protocol and indicate the date the record was abstracted.

**REFERENCE**

DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification
Name
Institutional Identification
Address
Hospital or Clinic
Address
Hospital or Clinic Number

Age _____ Sex _____ Race _____

ONCOLOGY RECORD
Anatomic Site of Cancer
Histologic Cell Type
Grade
Time of Classification: cTNM _____ sTNM _____ pTNM _____ rTNM _____ aTNM _____
Date of Classification

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — PRIMARY MALIGNANT BONE TUMORS

Symptoms (check all applicable)
- Pain
- Swelling
- Weight Loss
- Functional impairment
- Fever
- Malaise
- Other, specify

Roentgenographic Findings
- Roentgenogram
- Angiogram
- Tomogram
- Bone scan (type)

Duration
Quality
Specific location of tumor within bone
Date

Long bone, specify R _____ L _____
Epiphysis _____ Metaphysis _____ Proximal
Distal _____ Diaphysis (central)
Periosteal
Pelvic Bone R _____ L _____
Cranium (bone and site)
Mandible R _____ L _____
Spine C _____ T _____ L _____ S _____ Co _____
Scapula R _____ L _____
Rib R _____ L _____
Soft tissue mass, specify

Clinical Findings (check all applicable)
Location of primary
R _____ L _____
Clinical size _____ cm
Not palpable

Skin temperature elevation
Yes No NM
Systemic fever (1st exam)
Tenderness
Venous distention
Lymphedema
Fracture
Ecchymosis
Muscle atrophy
Lymph node evaluation

Extent of involvement
- Single primary tumor
- Multifocal primary within one bone
- Multiple primaries in more than one bone

Size: Longitudinal _____ cm
Transverse _____ cm

Specify node(s)
Lesion edge
- Sharp edge with sclerosis
- Sharp edge without sclerosis
- Ill-defined

Laboratory Findings (1st admission)
Alkaline phos
Norm Elev Decr
Hemoglobin
Calcium
Phosphorus
Total proteins
WBC

Character of bone involvement
- Sclerotic
- Lytic
- Medullary involvement
- No mention

Differential count
Cortical involvement
- No mention

Pathologic Findings
Biopsy of primary
- Thickening
- Thinning
- Perforation
This institution
- No mention
Tourniquet used
- Spiculation
Type of biopsy
- Solid sclerosis
- Soft parts
Incisional
- Amorphous
Trocchar
- No mention
Needle

Evidence of metastases (1st exam):
Pos Neg Not done

Histologic type

Source
Pathology report
Review slides

Type
Chest film
Chest tomogram
Bone survey

Definitive Surgery
Gross size _____ x _____
(dimensions in cm)
Location within bone (long bones only)
Proximal _____ Distal _____ Central
Final diagnosis
(histopathology)

Residual Tumor

Host — Performance Status (H)
- Scale used: AJC
- Zubrod
- Karnofsky

- cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION
No descriptors for primary tumor (T), regional lymph nodes (N), or distant metastasis (M) are recommended by the Task Force on Malignant Bone Tumors at this time. Prospective use of this malignant bone tumor data-collecting form will hopefully improve the recording of basic data needed for future prognostic factor evaluation.

HISTOPATHOLOGY
Osteosarcoma, parosteal osteosarcoma, chondrosarcoma, fibrosarcoma, malignant giant cell tumor, primary reticulum cell sarcoma (lymphosarcoma), and Ewing's sarcoma. Terms such as periosteal sarcoma, perosteal osteosarcoma, undifferentiated round cell sarcoma, hemangiosarcoma (or its synonym), adamantinoma, and undifferentiated bone sarcoma should be entered as given in the pathology reports where they differ from the aforementioned classification.

Do not include chordoma of bone or myeloma.

GRADE
Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

The prognostic significance of grading for primary malignant bone tumors is unpredictable

STAGE GROUPING
No stage grouping is recommended at present.

Residual Tumor (R)
- R0 No residual tumor
- R1 Microscopic residual tumor
- R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H0</th>
<th>Normal activity</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H1</th>
<th>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</th>
<th>Karnofsky scale (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90-100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H2</th>
<th>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</th>
<th>70-80</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50-60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H3</th>
<th>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</th>
<th>30-40</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30-40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H4</th>
<th>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</th>
<th>10-20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LIST OF BONES

Axial Skeleton

Skull

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Vertebra column</th>
<th>Ribs (left or right) and sternum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cranium</td>
<td>1st cervical or atlas</td>
<td>10th thoracic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd cervical or axis</td>
<td>11th thoracic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd cervical</td>
<td>12th thoracic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4th cervical</td>
<td>1st lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5th cervical</td>
<td>2nd lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6th cervical</td>
<td>3rd lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7th cervical</td>
<td>4th lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1st thoracic</td>
<td>5th lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd thoracic</td>
<td>1st sacral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3rd thoracic</td>
<td>2nd sacral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4th thoracic</td>
<td>3rd sacral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5th thoracic</td>
<td>4th sacral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6th thoracic</td>
<td>5th sacral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7th thoracic</td>
<td>coccyx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8th thoracic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9th thoracic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendicular Skeleton (left or right)

Upper extremity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>radius</th>
<th>ulna</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clavicle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scapula</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humerus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metacarpal (identify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phalanges (identify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lower extremity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>femur</th>
<th>patella</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ilium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pubis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarsal (identify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metatarsal (identify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phalanges (identify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

148
Histologic Typing of Primary Bone Tumors and Tumor-Like Lesions

I. Bone-forming tumors
   A. Benign
      1. Osteoma
      2. Osteoid osteoma and osteoblastoma (benign osteoblastoma)
   B. Malignant
      1. Osteosarcoma (osteogenic sarcoma)
      2. Juxtacortical osteosarcoma (parosteal osteosarcoma)

II. Cartilage-forming tumors
   A. Benign
      1. Chondroma
      2. Osteochondroma (osteo-cartilaginous exostosis)
      3. Chondroblastoma (benign chondroblastoma, epiphyseal chondroblastoma)
      4. Chondromyxoid fibroma
   B. Malignant
      1. Chondrosarcoma
      2. Juxtacortical chondrosarcoma
      3. Mesenchymal chondrosarcoma

III. Giant cell tumor (osteoclastoma)

IV. Marrow tumors
   1. Ewing's sarcoma
   2. Reticulosarcoma of bone
   3. Lymphosarcoma of bone
   4. Myeloma

V. Vascular tumors
   A. Benign
      1. Hemangioma
      2. Lymphangioma
      3. Giomus tumor (glomerangioma)
   B. Intermediate or indeterminate
      1. Hemangioendothelioma
      2. Hemangiopericytoma
   C. Malignant
      1. Angiosarcoma

VI. Other connective tissue tumors
   A. Benign
      1. Desmoplastic fibroma
      2. Lipoma
   B. Malignant
      1. Fibrosarcoma
      2. Liposarcoma
      3. Malignant mesenchymoma
      4. Undifferentiated sarcoma

VII. Other tumors
   1. Chordoma
   2. “Adamantinoma” of long bones
   3. Neurilemmoma (schwannoma, neurinoma)
   4. Neurofibroma

VIII. Unclassified tumors

IX. Tumor-like lesions
   1. Solitary bone cyst (simple or unicameral bone cyst)
   2. Aneurysmal bone cyst
   3. Juxta-articular bone cyst (intracapsular ganglion)
   4. Metaphyseal fibrous defect (nonossifying fibroma)
   5. Eosinophilic granuloma
   6. Fibrous dysplasia
   7. “Myositis ossificans”
   8. “Brown tumor” of hyperparathyroidism

## Classification of Bone Tumors*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cartilaginous</th>
<th>Osseous</th>
<th>Resorptive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Osteochondroma, solitary</td>
<td>Osteomas and ossifying</td>
<td>Bone cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and multiple</td>
<td>fibromas of skull and</td>
<td>Diffuse osteitis fibrosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroma</td>
<td>jaws</td>
<td>(parathyroidism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondromyxoid fibroma</td>
<td>Osteoid osteoma</td>
<td>Fibrous dysplasia, polyostotic or monostotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondroblastoma, benign</td>
<td>Osteogenic sarcoma,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and malignant</td>
<td>sclerosing and osteolytic</td>
<td>Giant cell tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondrosarcoma, primary</td>
<td>Parosteal osteoma and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or secondary</td>
<td>myositis ossificans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tumors of nonosseous origin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marrow and haversian systems</th>
<th>Metastatic deposits</th>
<th>By inclusion or direct invasion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ewing's sarcoma</td>
<td>Carcinoma of prostate,</td>
<td>Chordoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary reticulum sarcoma</td>
<td>breast, kidneys, etc.</td>
<td>Angioma, angiosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple myeloma</td>
<td>Metastatic lymphomas,</td>
<td>Fibroma and fibrosarcoma,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloroma and leukemia of bone</td>
<td>neuroblastomas, and sarcomas</td>
<td>fascial or nerve sheath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reticulendothelioisis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Myosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthomas and granulomas of bone</td>
<td></td>
<td>Liposarcoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


## Classification of 3,987 Primary Tumors of Bone*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histologic type</th>
<th>Benign</th>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>Malignant</th>
<th>Cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hematopoietic</td>
<td>Myeloma</td>
<td>1,286</td>
<td>Reticulum cell sarcoma</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,481 cases (37%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondrogenic</td>
<td>Osteochondroma</td>
<td>464</td>
<td>Primary chondrosarcoma</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>969 cases (24%)</td>
<td>Chondroma</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>Secondary chondrosarcoma</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chondroblastoma</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Mesenchymal chondrosarcoma</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chondromyxoid fibroma</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osteogenic</td>
<td>Osteoid osteoma</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>Osteogenic sarcoma</td>
<td>650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805 cases (20%)</td>
<td>Benign osteoblastoma</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Parosteal osteogenic sarcoma</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown origin</td>
<td>Giant cell tumor</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>Ewing's tumor</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>388 cases (10%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Malignant giant cell tumor</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adamantinoma</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrogenic</td>
<td>Fibroma</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Fibrosarcoma</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153 cases (4%)</td>
<td>Desmoplastic fibroma</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notochordal</td>
<td>Chordoma</td>
<td>122</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122 cases (3%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular</td>
<td>Hemangioma</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>Hemangioendothelioma</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 cases (1.5%)</td>
<td>Hemangiopericytoma</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipogenic</td>
<td>Lipoma</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 cases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurogenic</td>
<td>Neurilemmoma</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 cases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total benign</td>
<td>1,025</td>
<td>Total malignant</td>
<td>2,962</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Malignant tumors</th>
<th>Quasimalignant tumors</th>
<th>Benign tumors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Osteogenic sarcoma</td>
<td>Giant cell tumor</td>
<td>Osteoid osteoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conventional Juxtacortical</td>
<td></td>
<td>Benign osteoblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondrosarcoma</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fibrous dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central Peripheral Juxtacortical</td>
<td>Solitary Polyostotic</td>
<td>Chondroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrosarcoma</td>
<td>Solitary Multiple Juxtacortical</td>
<td>Osteocartilaginous exostosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well-differentiated Poorly differentiated</td>
<td></td>
<td>Solitary Multiple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Desmoplastic fibroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Benign chondroblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chondromyxoid fibroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nonosteogenic fibroma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 Tumor Grade (G)

G1  Well-differentiated
G2  Moderately well-differentiated
G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Once the histologic type has been determined, the tumor should be graded according to the accepted criteria of malignancy including cellularity, cellular pleomorphism, and mitotic activity. In addition, the amount of intercellular substance such as collagen or mucoid material should be considered as a favorable factor in assessing the grade.

Also, there are tumors that are highly malignant regardless of their cellular differentiation and they should be classified as grade 3 neoplasms. The most common of these are rhabdomyosarcoma and certain types of angiosarcoma and synovial sarcoma. The age of the patient may also be an important factor in determining the aggressiveness of a given tumor. For example, the prognosis of childhood fibrosarcoma is better than that of the adult forms of this neoplasm. Moreover, superficially located tumors have a more favorable prognosis than those deeply located. For the sake of simplicity, these features have been incorporated into the "G" designation, which has, in turn, been added to the TNM scheme for tumor evaluation.

2.0 ANATOMY

2.1 Primary Site: A large variety of soft tissues can give rise to these sarcomas. The tissue is mesenchymal in origin and includes all types of connective tissue, vascular tissue, muscle, fat, capsules and ligaments, peripheral nerve tissue, and extraskeletal bone and cartilage. Depending upon the location, different structures are at risk and included in the "T" classification.

2.2 Nodal Stations: The lymph node stations relate to the site of origin of the sarcoma and any of the major lymph node compartments may be at risk.

2.3 Metastatic Sites: The lung is the most common site that may be involved but a large variety of remote visceras may be invaded, such as bone, liver, brain, etc.
3.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: Physical examination, roentgenograms of region, including chest film and skeletal survey, blood chemistries, and blood counts should be carried out. Arteriography is indicated if it will define tumor extensions and if the tumor has an identifiable blood supply. Lymphangiography is an optional procedure. Radioisotopic scans and studies should be obtained as indicated.

3.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: This type of staging is occasionally indicated but would consist of biopsy of extensions of tumors and draining nodes.

3.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: After complete resection, the entire specimen is evaluated to determine the type of tumor and its grade of malignancy.

3.4 Retreatment Staging: All recurrences must be determined by biopsy and complete staging, particularly for metastatic disease as indicated above.

4.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

4.1 Primary Tumor (T)
- TX: Minimum requirements cannot be met
- T0: No demonstrable tumor
- T1: Tumor less than 5 cm in diameter
- T2: Tumor 5 cm or greater in diameter
- T3: Tumor that grossly invades bone, major vessel, or major nerve

4.2 Nodal Involvement (N)
- NX: Minimum requirements cannot be met
- N0: No histologically verified metastases to lymph nodes
- N1: Histologically verified regional lymph node metastasis

4.3 Distant Metastasis (M)
- MX: Not assessed
- M0: No (known) distant metastasis
- M1: Distant metastasis present

5.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)
- R0: No residual tumor
- R1: Microscopic residual tumor
- R2: Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify ________________

6.0 STAGE GROUPING

Stage I
- IA: G1 T1 N0 M0
  Grade 1 tumor less than 5 cm in diameter with no regional lymph nodal or distant metastases
- IB: G1 T2 N0 M0
  Grade 1 tumor 5 cm or greater in diameter with no regional lymph nodal or distant metastases

Stage II
- IIA: G2 T1 N0 M0
  Grade 2 tumor less than 5 cm in diameter with no regional lymph nodal or distant metastases
- IIB: G2 T2 N0 M0
  Grade 2 tumor 5 cm or greater in diameter with no regional lymph nodal or distant metastases

Stage III
- IIIA: G3 T1 N0 M0
  Grade 3 tumor less than 5 cm in diameter with no regional lymph nodal or distant metastases
- IIIB: G3 T2 N0 M0
  Grade 3 tumor 5 cm or greater in diameter with no regional lymph nodal or distant metastases

Specify ________________
IIIc Any G T1,2 N1 M0
Tumor of any histologic grade or size (no invasion) with regional lymph node metastases but without distant metastases

Stage IV

IVA Any G T3 Any N M0
Tumor of any histologic grade of malignancy which grossly invades bone, major vessels, or major nerves with or without regional lymph node metastases but without distant metastases

IVB Any G Any T Any N M1
Tumor with distant metastases

7.0 REFERENCES


**DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Identification</th>
<th>Institutional Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Hospital or Clinic Identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospital or Clinic Number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age _______ Sex _______ Race _______</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ONCOLOGY RECORD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic Site of Cancer</th>
<th>Histologic Cell Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>cTNM</th>
<th>sTNM</th>
<th>pTNM</th>
<th>rTNM</th>
<th>aTNM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of Classification</th>
<th>Date of Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION — SOFT TISSUE SARCOMA**

**Clinical Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anatomic Site</th>
<th>Site of Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extremities</th>
<th>Tendon, fascia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder and/or arm</td>
<td>Major nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbow and/or below</td>
<td>(specify)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttocks and/or thigh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knee and/or below</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropertioneum or mediastinum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other ______ (specify)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Localization</th>
<th>Blood vessels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other ______ (specify)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumor Size (largest dimension in cm)</th>
<th>Length less than 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exact dimensions ___________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional Lymph Node Involvement</th>
<th>Grade of Malignancy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Grade 1 Well-differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional</td>
<td>Grade 2 Moderately well-differentiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distant</td>
<td>Grade 3-4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metastasis</th>
<th>Tumor Size (largest dimension in cm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Length less than 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bone</td>
<td>5 or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymph node</td>
<td>Exact dimensions ___________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Stage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Residual Tumor</th>
<th>Host — Performance Status (H)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H_______ Scale used: AUC _____ Zubrod _____ Karnofsky _______</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy.
## DEFINITIONS

### TNM CLASSIFICATION

**Primary Tumor (T)**
- **TX**: Minimum requirements cannot be met
- **T0**: No demonstrable tumor
- **T1**: Tumor less than 5 cm in diameter
- **T2**: Tumor 5 cm or greater in diameter
- **T3**: Tumor which grossly invades bone, major vessel, or major nerve

**Nodal Involvement (N)**
- **NX**: Minimum requirements cannot be met
- **N0**: No histologically verified metastases to regional lymph nodes
- **N1**: Histologically verified regional lymph node metastasis

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- **MX**: Not assessed
- **M0**: No (known) distant metastasis
- **M1**: Distant metastasis present

Specify according to the following notations:

- Pulmonary - PUL
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Osseous - OSS
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Hepatic - HEP
- Pleura - PLE
- Brain - BRA
- Other - OTH

### HISTOPATHOLOGY

- **Alveolar soft part sarcoma**
- **Leiomyosarcoma**
- **Malignant schwannoma**
- **Angiosarcoma**
- **Liposarcoma**
- **Rhabdomyosarcoma**
- **Extraskeletal chondrosarcoma**
- **Malignant fibrohistiocytoma**
- **Synovial sarcoma**
- **Extraskeletal osteosarcoma**
- **Malignant mesenchymoma**
- **Sarcoma, type not designated**
- **Fibrosarcoma**

### GRADE

- Well-differentiated, moderately well-differentiated, poorly to very poorly differentiated, or numbers 1, 2, 3-4

### STAGE GROUPING

#### Stage I - 1A
- **G1**
- **T1**
- **N0**

- **G1**
- **T2**
- **N0**

**Stage II - IIA**
- **G2**
- **T1**
- **N0**

- **G2**
- **T2**
- **N0**

**Stage III - IIIA**
- **G3**
- **T1**
- **N0**

- **G3**
- **T2**
- **N0**

- **G3**
- **T2**
- **N1**
- **M0**

**Stage IV - IVA**
- **Any G**
- **T3**
- **Any N**
- **M0**

- **Any G**
- **Any T**
- **Any N**
- **M1**

**Residual Tumor (R)**
- **R0**: No residual tumor
- **R1**: Microscopic residual tumor
- **R2**: Macroscopic residual tumor

### HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>ECOG/Zubrod scale (% of normal)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H0</td>
<td>Normal activity (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Karnofsky scale**: 90-100, 70-80, 50-60, 30-40, 10-20
STAGING OF CANCER IN PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

Cancers in pediatric patients have recently been considered by a Task Force of the American Joint Committee. In the fall of 1975, a combined meeting of representatives of SIOP, AJC, and UICC set up preliminary recommendations regarding a TNM classification and staging of neuroblastoma, Wilms' tumor, and soft tissue sarcomas in children. Subsequently there have been three additional meetings. Representatives from the Japanese Joint Committee joined the group at our last meeting. The staging system that follows is presented for a prospective feasibility trial that will be undertaken by several institutions in the United States, Japan, and Europe in 1977 and 1978 and is provisional pending accumulation of further data. It is planned that after this field trial, a final staging system will be presented at the International Union Against Cancer in Buenos Aires in 1978. In the future, further refinement of classifying and staging of other cancers occurring in children will be undertaken.

TNM CLASSIFICATION AND STAGING OF PEDIATRIC TUMORS

Nephroblastoma (Wilms')
Neuroblastoma (including ganglioneuroblastoma and ganglioneuroma)
Soft tissue sarcomas

General Rules for Classification

1. The TNM system is based on the assessment of:
   - the extent of the primary tumor — T
   - the condition of the regional nodes — N (the codes used for N categories are provisional)
   - the absence or presence of distant metastases, including lymph node involvement beyond the regional nodes — M

2. Clinical-Diagnostic TNM is based on clinical and radiologic examinations before any treatment. Mandatory examinations are specified for each tumor; if not available X is used.

*At the present time no data forms for cancer staging in pediatric patients have been developed. These will be proposed in the future. In the meantime, all data considered pertinent to staging of cancer should be recorded in the patient's record.

3. Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic TNM or "pTNM" is based on evidence derived from surgical operation and histopathology. When surgery is performed after radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy, the category yp is added (ypTNM).

4. Staging, traditionally, is mainly based on the situation after surgery. Two staging systems, however, are proposed for trial — clinical-diagnostic and postsurgical treatment-pathologic. They are not similar and do not have the same meaning since they are decided at different times on the basis of different information. The category yp also applies to surgical-pathologic staging.

WILMS' TUMOR

Clinical TNM

Mandatory: Clinical examination, I.V.P., P.A., and lateral chest films

cT

TX Inadequate information on the primary tumor
T0 The primary is undetectable by palpation or radiographic procedure

Two alternatives are being considered for the field trials:

A. T1 Not crossing midline by palpation and/or I.V.P.
   T2 Crossing midline by palpation and/or I.V.P.

B. T1 Area of renal shadow on I.V.P. 1<80 cm²
   T2 Area of renal shadow on I.V.P. 1>80 cm²

No T3 in Wilms' tumor

T5 Bilateral primary tumors occurring simultaneously

N Definitions: Regional lymph nodes are defined as those nodes located in the hilum of the kidney, the renal pedicle, and para-aortic

1 Calculated by measuring the maximum vertical and horizontal axis.
region between the diaphragm and the bifurcation of the aorta. All other nodes are considered distant metastases.

Since lymphangiography is rarely performed in Wilms' tumor, this usually cannot be assessed.

NX Inadequate information (no lymphangiogram)

N0 Para-aortic lymph nodes considered normal on lymphangiogram

N1 Lymph nodes considered to contain tumor

M Not assessed

MX No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify sites according to the following notations:
- Pulmonary - PUL
- Osseous - OSS
- Hepatic - HEP
- Brain - BRA
- Lymph Nodes - LYM
- Bone Marrow - MAR
- Pleura - PLE
- Skin - SKI
- Eye - EYE
- Other - OTH

Postoperative Treatment - Pathologic TNM

This indicates the local extent of the tumor and of the lymph nodes whether or not complete removal was done and is derived from the first surgical attempt at removal (and from histopathology). When surgery is performed after radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy, the category y is added (e.g., ypT-1). This excludes cases found to be inoperable at first surgery, treated with XRT and/or chemotherapy, and reoperated; these are pT3C.

pT

TX Inadequate information on the primary tumor

T0 Not applicable in Wilms' tumor

T1 Intrarenal tumor (completely encapsulated). Excision complete. Margins histologically free

T2 Tumor extending beyond the capsule or renal parenchyma. Excision complete*

pT3 Excision incomplete

3A Microscopic residual tumor confined to the tumor bed. To include histologically positive adhesions, previous biopsy or localized operative rupture is assumed not to have involved the peritoneal cavity

3B Macroscopic residual or widespread contamination of normal tissues during surgery, or evidence of preoperative rupture

3C Cases where attempted nephrectomy proved impossible. These cases cannot be reclassified as ypT at later surgery

pT5 Bilateral disease histologically confirmed

pN

NX No surgical excision of regional lymph nodes performed, or there is inadequate information on the pathologic findings

N0 Sampled lymph nodes histologically negative

N1 Sampled lymph nodes histologically positive. All tumorous regional lymph nodes are considered resected

N2 Sampled lymph nodes histologically positive. Tumorous nodes not considered totally resected (including surgically ruptured nodes)

*This includes breach of the renal capsule and/or tumor seen microscopically outside the capsule and tumor adhesions microscopically confirmed and infiltrations of, or tumor thrombosis within, the renal vessels outside the kidney. The tumor infiltrates the renal pelvis and/or ureter, peripelvis, and pericalyceal fat.
In the case of unilateral tumor, the subscript a is added if the tumor is not crossing the midline, and b if it crosses it.

Example: "T thor 1" is a tumor arising in the thorax of less than 5 cm on chest roentgenogram.

**N**

**Definitions:** Regional lymph nodes are defined as follows:

- **In an abdominal or pelvic primary,** all the lymph nodes that are within the abdomen and pelvis, including the external iliac nodes
- **In a thoracic primary,** all the lymph nodes that are within the thorax and the supravclavicular regions
- **In a cervical primary,** all the lymph nodes that are within the neck and supraclavicular regions
- All other involved lymph nodes are considered distant metastases

**NX** Inadequate information on regional lymph nodes

**N0** Normal lymph nodes are assessed clinically and/or radiographically (lymphangiography is necessary for coding N0 in the abdomen and pelvis)

**N1** Regional lymph nodes considered to contain tumor

**M**

**MX** Not assessed

**M0** No (known) distant metastasis

**M1** Distant metastasis present

Specify ____________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- **Pulmonary** - PUL
- **Osseous** - OSS
- **Hepatic** - HEP
- **Brain** - BRA
- **Lymph Nodes** - LYM
- **Bone Marrow** - MAR
- **Pleurac** - PLE
- **Skin** - SKI
- **Eye** - EYE
- **Other** - OTH
Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic TNM

This indicates the local extent of the tumor and of the lymph nodes and whether or not complete removal was done and is derived from the first surgical attempt at removal (and from histopathology). When surgery is performed after radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy, the category y is added (e.g., yPT-1). This excludes cases found to be inoperable at first surgery, treated with XRT and/or chemotherapy, and re-operated; these are pT3C.

When more than one surgical procedure is carried out without intervening therapy as part of the primary treatment, this should be considered as one operation for pTNM classification (e.g., dumbbell or multicentric tumors).

pT

TX Inadequate information on the primary tumor, or no surgery performed on the primary. This is different from pT3C

T0 Primary site cannot be established at surgery (e.g., previously treated: yPT0 or multiple tumors in which the primary is not obvious)

T1 Tumor is considered completely removed. No histologic evidence of involved margins

No pT2 in neuroblastoma

pT3 Documented incomplete removal of tumor

3A Microscopic residual tumor

3B Macroscopic residual tumor including those patients undergoing grossly subtotal or partial excision

3C Attempted removal of primary tumor proved impossible. These cases can not be reclassified as yPT at later surgery. Only biopsy

pT5: Multicentric tumor

pN

NX No surgical excision of regional lymph nodes performed, or there is inadequate information on the pathologic findings

N0 Sampled lymph nodes histologically negative

N1 Sampled lymph nodes histologically positive. All tumorous regional lymph nodes are considered resected

N2 Sampled lymph nodes histologically positive. Tumorous nodes not totally resected

pM

MX Inadequate information

M0 No distant metastasis found at surgery

M1 Distant metastases found or confirmed at surgery (including positive bone marrow)

Staging

A - Clinical Staging

Based on clinical, radiologic, and bone marrow findings before any treatment

Stage I/II

Single nonmetastatic tumor <10 cm meeting criteria for T1, T2, N0

Stage III:

Single nonmetastatic tumor either >10 cm or with suspected regional lymph node involvement, meeting criteria for T3 or N1, or both, M0

Stage IV

Single tumor of any local extent, metastasis (es) present including nodes beyond regional lymph nodes. Any T, Any N, M1

Stage V

Multicentric primary tumor, of any local extent, with or without metastasis (es). Any T, Any N, Any M

B - Postsurgical Treatment - Pathologic Staging

Stage I

Single nonmetastatic tumor of any size, with no evidence of lymph node involvement, considered totally resected. Meeting criteria for pT1, pNX, pN0, pM0
Stage II
Single primary tumor of any size, with reg-
mental lymph node involvement. No dis-
tant metastases. Primary and involved lymph nodes considered totally resected.
Meeting criteria for pT1, pN1, pM0.

Stage III
Single primary tumor of any size. Docu-
mented incomplete removal of the prim-
ary and/or involved lymph nodes. No dis-
tant metastases. T3, N1, M0

Stage IIIA
Microscopic residual tumor. (pT3A); M0

Stage IIIB
Macroscopic residual tumor. (pT3B)
and/or pN2, M0

Stage IIIC
Tumor which could not be removed at all.
(pT3C), M0

Stage IV
Single tumor of any local extent, metas-
tasis (es) present. Any T, Any N, Any M

Stage V
Multicentric primary tumor of any local
extent. Any T, Any N, Any M

cT
Each tumor site is to be indicated by:
ORB - orbit
HEA - head and neck
LIM - limbs
PEL - pelvis, including walls, genital tract,
and pelvic viscera
ABD - abdomen, including walls and vis-
cera
THO - thorax, including walls, diaphragm,
and viscera
TX - inadequate information on the primary
tumor
T0 - The site of the primary tumor cannot be
established. The diagnosis is made by
histologic examination of metastatic
tumor
T1 - The greatest diameter of the primary
tumor is less than 5 cm and the tumor is
confined to the organ or tissue of origin
(e.g., nodule in the cheek 2 cm in diam-
eter; parotid glands and bones not in-
volved)
T2 - The greatest diameter of the primary
tumor is 5 cm or greater but remains
confined to the organ or tissue of origin
T3 - Involvement of one or more contiguous
organs or tissues by tumor of any size
In case of doubt between 1, 2, and 3,
code 3 only if contiguous involvement
is demonstrated (e.g., radiologically in
the case of bones). If only suspected,
code 1 or 2.

Examples of Contiguous Involvement:
- Middle ear: bone, CNS, peripheral
nerve
- Orbit: bones (radiologically)
- Tonsil: base of tongue, soft palate (any
involvement beyond the pillar)
- Nasopharynx:
  - bones and sinus (radiologically)
  - nasal cavity
  - cranial nerve palsies and any CNS
involvement
- Tongue: floor, cheek, tonsil, gums
- Parotid area: VII nerve, skin, bone,
pharynx
- Limbs: bones (radiologically), skin, nerves

STAGING OF SOFT TISSUE
SARCOMAS* IN PEDIATRIC PATIENTS

Clinical TNM
Mandatory: Clinical examination, P.A., lat-
eral chest roentgenogram, skeletal survey, and bone mar-
row examination. For primaries in the head, include skull
roentgenograms and appropri-
ate tomography and neuroradiologic investigations. For
primaries below the diaphragm
including lower limbs, include
I.V.P. and/or lymphangiography.

*For the most part and with only a few variances,
recommendations regarding staging of soft tis-
sue sarcoma in children are similar to those of
the task force on this cancer. Grading of soft
tissue sarcoma has not been utilized, however,
in the stage grouping in pediatric tumor.
- Paratesticular tumor: skin
- Bladder: prostate (particularly most of the tumors of the base of the bladder are T3). Cystoscopy may show prostate not involved in some cases
- Vagina: labia, uterus, pelvic walls, bladder
- Retroperitoneal: all T3

T5 Does not apply to soft tissue sarcoma. When there is more than one tumor, it is considered there is a primary and a metastasis.

N

Definitions: A complete list of all possible tumor sites defining regional lymph nodes is not given. The following are examples:

- Head: nodes are considered metastatic below the clavicles
- Abdomen and pelvis: nodes above the diaphragm are metastases
- Limbs: all nodes more centrally placed than groin or axilla are metastases

In the case of clearly unilateral tumors, all contralateral involved nodes are metastases.

NX Inadequate information on lymph nodes

N0 Normal lymph nodes as assessed clinically and/or radiographically (lymphangiography is necessary for coding N0 in the abdomen and pelvis and lower limbs)

N1 Regional lymph nodes considered to contain tumor

M

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify ______________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

Post-surgical Treatment - Pathologic TNM

This indicates the local extent of the tumor and of the lymph nodes and whether or not complete removal was done and is derived from the first surgical attempt at removal (and from histopathology). When surgery is performed after radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy, the category y is added (e.g., ypT1). This excludes cases found to be inoperable at first surgery, treated with XRT and/or chemotherapy, and reoperated; these are pT3C.

When more than one surgical procedure is carried out as part of the primary treatment (e.g., removal of a primary in the leg and, secondarily, wide excision of histologically involved margin) it should be considered as one operation 1. pTNM classification.

pT

TX Inadequate information on the primary tumor. This category includes patients who may have a biopsy for diagnostic purpose but for whom radical surgery is not proposed. This is different from pT3C

T0 Primary site cannot be established at surgery (e.g., previously treated ypT0 or multiple tumors in which the primary is not obvious)

T1 Completely resected tumor confined to the organ or tissue of origin, with margins histologically free of tumor

T2 Tumor extending beyond the organ or tissue of origin but completely resected, with margins histologically free of tumor
pT3  Documented incomplete removal of tumor

3A  Microscopic residual tumor confined to the tumor bed

3B  Macroscopic residual tumor, including those patients undergoing grossly subtotal or partial excision, patients with gross spillage, or patients with malignant ascites

3C  Attempted removal of primary impossible. Biopsy alone. These cases cannot be reclassified as yPT at later surgery

pT5  Not applicable to soft tissue sarcoma. One has to decide which tumor is the primary and then assess it

pN  

NX  No surgical excision of regional lymph nodes performed, or there is inadequate information on the pathological findings

N0  Sampled lymph nodes histologically negative

N1  Sampled lymph nodes histologically positive. Tumorous regional lymph nodes are considered resected

N2  Sampled lymph nodes histologically positive. Tumorous nodes not totally resected

pM  

MX  Inadequate information

M0  No distant metastasis found at surgery

M1  Distant metastases found or confirmed at surgery, including positive bone marrow

Staging

A  Clinical Staging
Based on clinical, radiologic, and bone marrow findings before any treatment.

Stage I/II
Nonmetastatic tumor of any size confined to the organ or tissue of origin meeting criteria for T1, T2, N0, M0

Stage III
Nonmetastatic tumor of any size, either involving one or more adjacent organs or structures or with suspected regional lymph node involvement or both meeting criteria for T3 or N1 or both or M0

Stage IV
Distant metastases present. Any T, Any N, M1

No stage V in soft tissue sarcoma; multiple sites are considered metastases

B  Postsurgical Treatment - Pathologic Staging

Stage I
Nonmetastatic tumor of any size, confined to its organ or tissue of origin, completely resected, with histologically free margins, no nodes sampled or negative nodes. pT1, pN, X0

Stage II
Nonmetastatic tumor of any size either extending beyond the organ or tissue of origin or with positive lymph nodes, or both. However, tumor and/or tumorous lymph nodes are considered totally resected. pT2 and/or pN1, M0

Stage III
Nonmetastatic tumor whatever its size and local extent. Documented incomplete removal of the primary and/or of the tumorous lymph nodes

Stage IIIA
Microscopic residual tumor (pT)

Stage IIIB
Macroscopic residual tumor (pT) and/or pN2

Stage IIIC
Tumor which could not be removed at all (pT)

Stage IV
Metastasis (es) present. Any T, Any N, M1
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE BRAIN

The most critical feature in the classification of brain tumors is histopathology. Accurate pathologic criteria and classification are essential to an understanding of the clinical and biologic behavior of the gliomas in particular, and most other tumors as well. The anatomic location and extent of tumors within the central nervous system are also of clinical and prognostic significance. Neuroradiologic-diagnostic procedures have become increasingly more accurate and reliable in providing topographic and morphologic information on tumors of the central nervous system and are useful at various points in diagnosis and management.

1.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

1.1 Tumors that are included in the analysis and evaluation are:

1. Astrocytomas
2. Oligodendroglialomas
3. Ependymal and choroid plexus tumors
4. Glioblastomas
5. Medulloblastomas
6. Meningiomas
7. Neurilemmomas (neurinomas, Schwannomas)
8. Hemangioblastomas
9. Neuronal tumors
10. Sarcomas
11. Reticulum cell sarcomas (microgliomas)

1.2 Histologic grade usually correlates with biologic activity of the tumor. This is particularly the case with malignant astrocytomas, the most common form of glioma. The age of the patient at the time of diagnosis is also of major importance for prognosis.

G1  Well-differentiated

G2  Moderately well-differentiated; no mitoses

G3  Poorly differentiated; occasional mitoses

G4  Very poorly differentiated; frequent mitoses, necrosis, marked pleomorphism

There is some criticism of the use of morphologic criteria alone for purposes of grading, but most classification systems are capable of incorporating such a system as an index of aggressiveness. This is further discussed in the Appendix.

2.0 ANATOMY

2.1 Primary Sites: A variety of tissues within the central nervous system can give rise to neoplasms. These include astrocytes and other glial cells, meninges, blood vessels, pituitary and pineal cells, and neural elements proper. The major structural sites involved are: the various lobes of the cerebral hemispheres; the midline structures including midbrain, pons, and medulla; the posterior fossa; and the spinal cord.

2.2 Nodal Stations: There are no lymphatic structures draining the central nervous system.

2.3 Metastatic Sites: Certain brain tumors can seed into the subarachnoid space. Hematogenous spread is very uncommon, but on rare occasions has occurred in bone and other sites.

3.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: This is based on neurologic symptoms and signs and neurologic diagnostic tests including skull radiographs, electroencephalograms, isotopic brain scans, cerebral angiography, pneumoencephalography, and computerized tomographic scanning.

3.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: This is based on the findings at craniotomy or other surgical procedures, including extent of tumor resection and the nature of the surgical margins.

3.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: This is based on histopathology, grade, and microscopic evidence of completeness of removal.

3.4 Retreatment Staging: Each recurrence must be treated as a new problem and requires complete reevaluation as in the primary workup.
3.5 Autopsy Staging: This is based on autopsy findings of histopathology, grade, and extent of disease.

4.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

4.1 Primary Tumor (T)

T0 Primary tumor is undetectable

Supratentorial tumor:

T1 Greatest diameter is less than 5 cm; confined to one side

T2 Greatest diameter is more than 5 cm; confined to one side

T3 Invades or encroaches upon the ventricular system; greatest diameter may be less than 5 cm

T4 Crosses the midline, invades the opposite hemisphere, or extends infratentorially

Infratentorial tumor:

T1 Greatest diameter is less than 3 cm; confined to one side

T2 Greatest diameter is more than 3 cm; confined to one side

T3 Invades or encroaches upon the ventricular system; greatest diameter may be less than 3 cm

T4 Crosses the midline, invades the opposite hemisphere, or extends supratentorially

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify

Specify sites according to the following notations:

- Subarachnoid Space
- Pulmonary
- Lymph Nodes
- Osseous
- Hepatic
- Bone Marrow
- Occult
- Other

Add "+" to the abbreviated notation to indicate that the pathology is proven.

5.0 POSTSURGICAL TREATMENT RESIDUAL TUMOR (R)

R0 No residual tumor

R1 Microscopic residual tumor

R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify

6.0 STAGE GROUPING

The essential feature in determining stage is the histologic grade.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>IA</th>
<th>G1</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>G1</td>
<td>T2,3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>IIA</th>
<th>G2</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIB</td>
<td>G2</td>
<td>T2,3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IIIA</th>
<th>G3</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>G3</td>
<td>T2,3</td>
<td>M0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>G4</th>
<th>T1-4</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G1-3</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Studies in progress may produce findings that will alter these recommendations at some point in the future when refined data on end results are available.

168
APPENDIX
HISTOLOGIC GRADING OF TUMORS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Criteria for the Diagnosis of Malignancy in Tumors of the Central Nervous System and Allied Structures

The uncritical application, to tumors of the central nervous system and allied structures, of those criteria for histologic and biologic malignancy which generally pertain to other neoplasms is inadequate for the following reasons:

1. Irrespective of the histologic malignancy of the tumor, its unimpeded growth within the confines of the skull as a space-occupying and expanding lesion inevitably leads to a fatal termination, which by definition is equated to clinical malignancy.

2. Similarly, the local pressure effects by an intracranial tumor upon vital neural structures may result in the clinical effects of malignancy, irrespective of the histologic type of tumor.

3. The obstructive effect of a growing tumor leads to the production of secondary occlusive hydrocephalus.

4. Certain criteria of malignancy of neoplasms which, in other body systems, pertain to their growth and spread, especially the characteristic of infiltrative growth and the capacity to metastasize, either within or outside the central nervous system, do not necessarily pertain, or have to be modified, to the evaluation of the malignant behavior of central nervous system tumors.

Thus tumors of the central nervous system and allied structures, in addition to their intrinsic benign or malignant histologic character that, to a considerable extent, determines their biologic behavior, may by their specific localization acquire certain characteristics that collectively will add up to the picture of what is regarded as "benign," "semi-benign," "relatively malignant," or "highly malignant."

The numerical grading used in this classification is based upon histologic criteria of malignancy and should be considered as an estimate of the usual behavior of each type of tumor. Numerical grade I is considered to be the most benign and grades II, III, and IV indicate increasing degrees of malignancy.

In this general evaluation, the pathologist confronted with the problem of malignancy and prognosis is faced with two sets of data. In the first analysis the evaluation of malignancy must clearly be based on a retrospective assessment of the postoperative prognosis and survival rates of other known similar examples, so that a final and reasonably accurate clinicopathologic correlation is arrived at which both reinforces the purely histopathologic evaluation of malignancy and at the same time is reinforced by it.

Second, the pathologist deduces malignancy from a number of purely histologic and cytologic data. These include increase of cellularity, the presence and rate of mitotic figures, the presence of atypical mitotic figures, pleomorphism of tumor cells, pleomorphism of tissue architecture, in particular necroses, abnormally prominent stromal reaction, disorderly stromal reaction and overgrowth, and the formation of pathologic blood vessels (corresponding to the angio graphic appearance of arteriovenous fistulas).

On the other hand, other features that are usually regarded as indicative of, or synonymous with, malignancy need not necessarily be recognized in the case of tumors of the central nervous system, especially those of neuroectodermal origin. For instance, lack of circumscripted and focal parenchymatous invasion is not a necessary accompaniment of cellular anaplasia or ultimate clinical malignancy. Also the actual presence of mitotic figures (as in oligodendroglioma) does not necessarily imply a particularly malignant behavior; the overall number of mitoses and the presence of abnormal mitotic figures are more important in evaluation. Similarly, local invasion of the leptomeninges is often clearly dissociated from either of the two features just quoted. This is, for example, the case in the pilocytic astrocytoma that involves the wall of the third ventricle, the optic nerve, the cerebellum, etc.

Although distant meningeal and ventricular metastases are often characteristic of highly malignant tumors such as the medulloblastoma, this phenomenon again is not always to be correlated with the highest degrees of cytologic malignancy, as seen in some oligodendrogliomas.
THE QUESTION OF GRADING

Following Broders' classification of epithelial tumors elsewhere in the body, an attempt has been made by Kernohan and his school to apply a system of grading by ascending degrees of malignancy numbered 1 to 4 to certain tumors of neuroectodermal origin, namely astrocytoma, oligodendroglioma, ependymoma, and neuroastrocytoma. This attempt stemmed both from a desire to simplify the then current classification of tumors of the central nervous system and from a need to offer to the neurosurgeon a prognostic evaluation of the tumor removed at surgery based on certain definite histologic and cytologic criteria. Attractive though this attempt at simplification might be, it has, however, to meet with a number of objections:

1. The sample of tissue so analysed may from surgical necessity not be representative of the tumor as a whole.

2. The specific evolution of the particular tumor in terms of its anaplastic potentialities is not fully expressed by such a scheme of grading; to illustrate this: a cerebellar pilocytic astrocytoma graded 1 does not have the same anaplastic potential as a cerebral astrocytoma or some other tumors also graded 1.

3. The pleomorphism of cell and tissue structures so frequently inherent in primary neuroectodermal tumors poses additional difficulties to the application of a simplified system of grading.

4. This cytologic grading makes it extremely difficult to place tumors with mixed cell populations into an already predetermined tumor category.

Nevertheless, the above remarks should not be regarded as basically antagonistic to some attempts at expressing the degree of malignancy of a particular tumor of the central nervous system. Indeed, from the clinical and therapeutic points of view, no classification based on purely histologic entities is satisfactory unless adequate cognizance is taken of, and information provided on, the degree of malignancy of a particular tumor submitted for examination. Thus, it is the duty and prerogative of the pathologist to provide his clinical colleagues with an informed opinion on the likely evolution of a particular tumor, and to some extent this prognostic opinion is embodied in the recognition of specific clinicopathologic neuro-oncologic entities. As an illustration, it might be pointed out that two tumors of similar cellularity, isomorphic appearance, and mitotic rate, such as the medulloblastoma and some oligodendrogliomas, will not necessarily and in fact usually do not exhibit the same biologic behavior. This acquired body of knowledge is clearly the result of previous collaborative clinicians and pathologists in the field of neuro-oncology.
DATA FORM FOR CANCER STAGING

Patient Identification

Institutional Identification

Name
Address
Hospital or Clinic Number

Hospital or Clinic Address

Age _____ Sex _____ Race _____

ONCOLOGY RECORD

Anatomic Site of Cancer

Histologic Cell Type

Grade

Type of Classification* cTNM _____ sTNM _____ pTNM _____ rTNM _____ aTNM _____

Date of Classification

SITE-SPECIFIC INFORMATION—BRAIN

Initial Symptom(s) __________________________ Duration __________________________

Pertinent Family History __________________________ Antecedent Illness

Previous Therapy __________________________ Concomitant Illness

Clinical Evaluation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Duration (wks)</th>
<th>Sign</th>
<th>Degree of Deficit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>______________</td>
<td>Altered state of consciousness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental change</td>
<td>______________</td>
<td>Papilledema</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual disturbance</td>
<td>______________</td>
<td>Cranial nerve palsy (R) ___ (L) ___</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizure</td>
<td>______________</td>
<td>Cerebellar deficit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor Loss (R) _______ (L) ___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R) _______ (L) ___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory Loss (R) _______ (L) ___</td>
<td></td>
<td>Motor paresis (R) ___ (L) ___</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech disturbance</td>
<td>______________</td>
<td>Sensory deficit (R) ___ (L) ___</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other _______</td>
<td>______________</td>
<td>Other ____________________</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diagnostic Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Date(s)</th>
<th>Surgery</th>
<th>Date(s)</th>
<th>Therapy</th>
<th>Tumor Character</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EEG</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Biopsy only</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>encapsulated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear scan</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Subtotal resection</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>vascular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT scan</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Radical subtotal resection</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>cystic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiogram</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>&quot;Total&quot; resection</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>infiltrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Study</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Lobectomy</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>T evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other ______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Shunt</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>T0 ___ T2 ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Other __________________</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>T0 ___ T3 ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>T1 ___ T4 ___</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Size(cm) __________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>Weight(g) __________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complications of Therapy

Surgical morbidity __________________________ Type ______

Surgical mortality __________________________ Method ______

Operative complication __________________________

Radiation toxicity __________________________

Drug toxicity __________________________

Metastasis

MX _____ M0 _____ M1 _____

Classification

T _____ N _____ M _____

Residual Tumor

R ______

Host — Performance Status (H)

H _______ Scale used: AJC _______ Zubrod _______ Karnofsky _______

* cTNM, clinical-diagnostic; sTNM, surgical-evaluative; pTNM, postsurgical treatment-pathologic; rTNM, retreatment; aTNM, autopsy
DEFINITIONS

TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)

TX No available information on primary tumor
T0 Primary tumor is undetectable

Supratentorial Tumor:

T1 Greatest diameter is less than 5 cm; confined to one side
T2 Greatest diameter is more than 5 cm; confined to one side
T3 Greatest diameter may be less than 5 cm; invades or encroaches upon the ventricular system
T4 Crosses the midline, invades the opposite hemisphere, or extends infratentorially

Infratentorial Tumor:

T1 Greatest diameter is less than 3 cm; confined to one side
T2 Greatest diameter is more than 3 cm; confined to one side
T3 Greatest diameter may be less than 3 cm; invades or encroaches upon the ventricular system
T4 Crosses the midline, invades the opposite hemisphere, or extends supratentorially

Node Involvement (N) - Does not apply to this site

Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed
M0 No (known) distant metastasis
M1 Distant metastasis present

Specify according to the following notations:
Subarachnoid Space - CSF
Pulmonary - PUL
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Bone Marrow - MAR
Occult - OCC
Other - OTH

GRADE

Well-differentiated; moderately well-differentiated, no mitoses; poorly differentiated, occasional mitoses;
very poorly differentiated, frequent mitoses, necrosis, and marked pleomorphism

STAGE GROUPING

Stage I

IA G1 T1 M0
IB G1 T2,3 M0

Stage II

IIA G2 T1 M0
IIB G2 T2,3 M0

Stage III

IIIA G3 T1 M0
IIIB G3 T2,3 M0

Stage IV

G4 T1-4 M0
G1-3 T4 M0
Any G Any T Any M

Residual Tumor (R)

R0 No residual tumor
R1 Microscopic residual tumor
R2 Macroscopic residual tumor

Specify

HOST (H) — Performance Status of Host

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>H0</th>
<th>Normal activity</th>
<th>ECOG/ Zubrod scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td>Symptomatic but ambulatory — cares for self</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td>Ambulatory more than 50% of time — occasionally needs assistance</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td>Ambulatory less than 50% of time — nursing care needed</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td>Bedridden — may need hospitalization</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

172
STAGING OF CANCER OF THE SKIN

1.0 ANATOMY

1.1 Primary Site: Skin cancers usually arise from those skin surfaces exposed to sunlight which include the face, ears, hands, scalp, and, to a much lesser degree, the protected truncal regions of the body and extremities.

1.2 Nodal Stations: Depending upon the origin of the skin cancer, the regional nodes are the ones involved. The common sites of the face drain to the parotid, submaxillary, and cervical nodal areas. The hands drain to the epitrochlear axillary and supravacular nodal areas.

1.3 Metastatic Sites: The most common site of metastases is the lung. Other sites for distant spread are rare.

2.0 RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

2.1 Clinical-Diagnostic Staging: The assessment of the skin cancer is based upon inspection and palpation of the involved area and regional nodes. Roentgenographic examination of underlying bony structures, particularly in the scalp about the mastoid region where there is bony involvement, is important, especially if the lesion is fixed.

2.2 Surgical-Evaluative Staging: Confirmation of the extent of disease by biopsy of suspected cutaneous or subcutaneous spread is necessary. Nodal aspiration or biopsy of suspicious nodes is desirable but not required.

2.3 Postsurgical Treatment-Pathologic Staging: Complete resection of the primary site is indicated.

2.4 Retreatment Staging: Biopsy for confirmation is recommended. Reevaluation of nodal involvement or spread to lung is important as basal cell carcinomas become more extensive.

3.0 TNM CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Primary Tumor (T)

TIS Preinvasive carcinoma (carcinoma in situ)

T0 No primary tumor present

T1 Tumor 2 cm or less in its largest dimension, strictly superficial or exophytic

T2 Tumor more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in its largest dimension or with minimal infiltration of the dermis, irrespective of size

T3 Tumor more than 5 cm in its largest dimension or with deep infiltration of the dermis, irrespective of size

T4 Tumor involving other structures such as cartilage, muscle, or bone

3.2 Nodal Involvement (N)

The nodal involvement for cervical nodes is identical to that of the head and neck cancers, and this can also be applied to other nodal regions as well.

N0 No clinically positive nodes

N1 Single clinically positive homolateral node less than 3 cm in diameter

N2 Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter or multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N2a Single clinically positive homolateral node 3 to 6 cm in diameter

N2b Multiple clinically positive homolateral nodes, none over 6 cm in diameter

N3 Massive homolateral node(s), bilateral nodes, or contralateral node(s)

N3a Clinically positive homolateral node(s), none over 6 cm in diameter

N3b Bilateral clinically positive nodes (in this situation, each side of the neck should be staged separately; that is, N3b: right, N2a: left, N1)
N3c Contralateral clinically positive node(s) only

3.3 Distant Metastasis (M)

MX Not assessed

M0 No (known) distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present
   Specify ________________

Specify sites according to the following notations:

Pulmonary - PUL
Osseous - OSS
Hepatic - HEP
Brain - BRA
Lymph Nodes - LYM
Bone Marrow - MAR
Pleura - PLE
Skin - SKI
Eye - EYE
Other - OTH

N1 Movable homolateral nodes
   N1a Nodes not considered to contain growth
   N1b Nodes considered to contain growth

N2 Movable contralateral or bilateral nodes
   N2a Nodes not considered to contain growth
   N2b Nodes considered to contain growth

N3 Fixed nodes

Distant Metastasis (M)

M0 No evidence of distant metastasis

M1 Distant metastasis present, including lymph nodes beyond the region in which the primary tumor is situated or satellite nodules more than 5 cm from the border of the primary tumor

No stage grouping is recommended at present by the UICC or by the American Joint Committee.

6.0 HISTOPATHOLOGY

The predominant tumors are squamous cell and basal cell carcinoma. The pathologic diagnosis is required to utilize this classification. Tumor grading for squamous cell carcinoma is recommended. Reference to the WHO nomenclature is advised.

6.1 Tumor Grade (G)

G1 Well-differentiated

G2 Moderately well-differentiated

G3-G4 Poorly to very poorly differentiated

Use whichever indicator is most appropriate (term or G + number)

5.0 STAGE GROUPING

No stage grouping is recommended at this time.

Note: The American Joint Committee for Cancer Staging utilizes the same definitions for cancer of the skin as far as the primary site (T) is concerned. However, for the regional nodes (N) and distant metastasis (M) the definitions vary. UICC definitions are as follows in these two categories:

Nodal Involvement (N)
The clinician may record whether palpable nodes are considered to contain growth or not.

N0 No palpable nodes
Part III. PERSONNEL AMERICAN JOINT COMMITTEE FOR CANCER STAGING AND END-RESULTS REPORTING
FULL COMMITTEE

*Oliver H. Behars, M. D., Chairman
*H. Marvin Pollard, M. D., Vice Chairman
Harvey W. Baker, M. D.
*David T. Carr, M. D.
Wm. M. Christopherson, M. D.
Jack Edeiken, M. D.
Robert V. P. Hutter, M. D.
Louis A. Leone, M. D.
*Seymour H. Levitt, M. D.
*Wm. A. Meissner, M. D.
Max Myers, Ph. D.
Gregory T. O'Conor, M. D.
Guy F. Robbins, M. D.
Philip Rubin, M. D.
R. Wayne Rundles, M. D.
Robert L. Schmitz, M. D.
Edward H. Soule, M. D.
John Ziegler, M. D.

CONSULTANTS

W. A. D. Anderson, M. D.
Murray M. Copeland, M. D.
Clifton F. Mountain, M. D.
A. H. Sellers, M. D., D. P. H.
Wm. F. Taylor, Ph. D.
Calvin Zippin, Sc. D.

LIAISON MEMBERS

Murray M. Copeland, M. D. (AACI)
Wm. L. Parry, M. D. (AUA)
W. Norman Thornton, M. D. (Ob-Gyn)
Wm. G. Thurman, M. D. (Pediatrics)

COMMITTEES

EDITORIAL COMMITTEE
David T. Carr, M. D., Chairman
Oliver H. Behars, M. D.
Philip Rubin, M. D.

CONFERENCE COMMITTEE
Jack Edeiken, M. D., Chairman
Robert V. P. Hutter, M. D.
R. Wayne Rundles, M. D.
John Ziegler, M. D.

MORPHOLOGY COMMITTEE
Gregory T. O'Conor, M. D., Chairman
Wm. M. Christopherson, M. D.
Robert V. P. Hutter, M. D.
Wm. A. Meissner, M. D.
Edward H. Soule, M. D.

ONCOLOGY RECORD & DATA COLLECTION COMMITTEE
Robert L. Schmitz, M. D., Chairman
Jack Edeiken, M. D.
Robert V. P. Hutter, M. D.
John C. Ivins, M. D.
John Laszlo, M. D.
Calvin Zippin, Sc. D.

PROTOCOL REVIEW COMMITTEE
H. Marvin Pollard, M. D., Chairman
David T. Carr, M. D.
Seymour H. Levitt, M. D.
Max Myers, Ph. D.

STATISTICS COMMITTEE
(Statistics and End-Results Reporting)
Max Myers, Ph. D., Chairman
Clifton F. Mountain, M. D.
Wm. F. Taylor, Ph. D.
Calvin Zippin, Sc. D.

STAFF

Andrew Mayer, M. D., Executive Secretary
Sydelle Galnick, Assistant Executive Secretary
Darlene Paulson, Secretary to the Chairman

*Executive Committee
TASK FORCES
of
THE AMERICAN JOINT COMMITTEE

TASK FORCE ON BREAST
Guy F. Robbins, M.D., Chairman
Florence Chu, M.D.
Jack Edelken, M.D.
Robert V. P. Hutter
Henry Leis, M.D.
Louis A. Leone, M.D.
W. Spencer Payne, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM TUMORS
Edward R. Laws, Jr., M.D., Chairman
Hillier L. Baker, Jr., M.D.
Kenneth Earle, M.D.
Simon Kramer, M.D.
M. S. Mahaley, M.D.
Mark Nesbit, Jr., M.D.
Jerome B. Posner, M.D.
Charles Wilson, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON COLON, RECTUM, & ANUS
David A. Wood, M.D., Chairman
Guy F. Robbins, M.D.
Charles B. Clayman, M.D.
Murray M. Copeland, M.D.
Elson B. Helwig, M.D.
H. Marvin Pollard, M.D.
Jonathan E. Rhoads, M.D.
John S. Spratt, M.D.
Maus W. Stearns, Jr., M.D.
Justin J. Stein, M.D.
Calvin Zippin, Sc. D.

TASK FORCE ON ESOPHAGUS
Clifton F. Mountain, M.D., Chairman
F. Henry Ellis, Jr., M.D.
Wm. O. Russell, M.D.
Milford D. Schulz, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON GYNECOLOGIC SITES
Howard Ulfelder, M.D., Chairman
Wm. M. Christopherson, M.D.
Herry E. Averette, M.D.
Luis Delclos, M.D.
Saul B. Gusberg, M.D.
C. Paul Hodgkinson, M.D.
Louis A. Leone, M.D.
John J. Mikuta, M.D.
Robert E. Scully, M.D.
Edward H. Soule, M.D.
W. Norman Thornton, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON HEAD AND NECK SITES
Harvey W. Baker, M.D., Chairman
Elliot Strong, M.D.
Oscar M. Guillamondeguí, M.D.
James E. Hamner III, D. D. S., Ph. D.
Robert D. Lindberg, M.D.
James R. Chandler, M.D.
Simon Kramer, M.D.
George Allen Sisson, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON LIP
Milford D. Schulz, M.D., Chairman
Alfred S. Ketcham, M.D.
A. H. Sellers, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON NOSE & PARANASAL SINUSES
Robert R. Smith, M.D., Chairman
Oliver H. Beahrs, M.D.
Vincent J. Hyams, M.D., Capt./MC USN
Duane Ilstrup
Richard H. Jesse, M.D.
Herbert D. Kerman, M.D.
Alfred S. Ketcham, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON HODGKIN'S DISEASE
R. Wayne Rundles, M.D., Chairman
Vincent T. DeVita, M.D.
Lillian Fuller, M.D.
Robert J. Lukes, M.D.
Saul A. Rosenberg, M.D.
Wm. O. Russell, M.D.
Samuel G. Taylor III, M.D.
Louis B. Thomas, M.D.
Edmund Gehan, Ph. D.
Max Myers, Ph. D.

TASK FORCE ON LUNG
Clifton F. Mountain, M.D., Chairman
David T. Carr, M.D.
Antolin Raventos, M.D.
Nael Martini, M.D.
Lewis B. Woolner, M.D.

TASK FORCE ON MALIGNANT BONE TUMORS
Murray M. Copeland, M.D., Chairman
Guy F. Robbins, M.D.
Michael Bonfiglio, M.D.
Crawford J. Campbell, M.D.
David C. Dahlin, M.D.
Jack Edelken, M.D.
Howard B. Latourette, M. D.
Richard G. Martin, M. D.
Theodore R. Miller, M. D.
Clifton F. Mountain, M. D.
Antolin Raventos, M. D.
Max Myers, Ph. D.

TASK FORCE ON MALIGNANT MELANOMA
Alfred S. Ketcham, M. D., Chairman
Wm. M. Christopherson, M. D.
W. A. D. Anderson, M. D.
John W. Berg, M. D.
Wallace T. Clark, M. D.
Thomas B. Fitzpatrick, M. D.
Edward T. Kremetz, M. D.
Wm. W. Shingleton, M. D.
John S. Stehlin, Jr., M. D.

TASK FORCE ON PANCREAS
H. Marvin Pollard, M. D., Chairman
W. A. D. Anderson, M. D.
Frank P. Brooks, M. D., Sc. D.
isdore Cohn, Jr., M. D.
Murray M. Copeland, M. D.
Roger R. Connely
Joseph G. Fortner, M. D.
John M. Kissane, M. D.
Henry M. Lemon, M. D.
Philip E. S. Palmer, M. D.
Louis B. Thomas, M. D.
Pual D. Webster III, M. D.
Stephen Carter, M. D., Consultant

TASK FORCE ON MALIGNANT TUMORS OF
CHILDHOOD (Pediatrics)
Mark Nesbit, Jr., M. D., Chairman
J. Bruce Beckwith, M. D.
E. Omer Burgert, Jr., M. D.
Milton H. Donaldson, M. D.
R. Derek T. Jenkin, M. D.
Hugh Lynn, M. D.
Edward H. Soule, M. D.
Wm. G. Thurman, M. D.
Jordan R. Wilbur, M. D.
John W. Duckett, M. D.

TASK FORCE ON SALIVARY GLANDS
Seymour H. Levitt, M. D., Chairman
Oliver H. Beahrs, M. D.
Vincent J. Hyams, M. D.
A. H. Sellers, M. D., D. P. H.
Edward H. Soule, M. D.
Elliot W. Strong, M. D.
Richard McHugh, Ph. D., Statistical Consultant

TASK FORCE ON SOFT TISSUE SARCOMA
Wm. O. Russell, M. D., Chairman
Robert L. Schmitz, M. D.
Jonathan Cohen, M. D.
Sidney J. Cutler, Sc. D.
Franz Enzinger, M. D.
Steven I. Hajdu, M. D.
Herman Heise
Richard G. Martin, M. D.
Wm. A. Meissner, M. D.
Wallace T. Miller, M. D.
Herman D. Suit, M. D.

TASK FORCE ON STOMACH
B. J. Kennedy, M. D., Chairman
Stanley O. Hoerr, M. D.
Wm. A. Meissner, M. D.
Grant N. Stemmermann, M. D.

TASK FORCE ON THYROID
Wm. A. Meissner, M. D., Chairman
Oliver H. Beahrs, M. D.
Wm. H. Beierwaltes, M. D.
Edgar L. Frazell, M. D.
John Beach Hazard, M. D.
Ferdinand A. Salzman, M. D.
Wm. F. Taylor, Ph. D.

TASK FORCE ON UROLOGIC SITES
George R. Prout, Jr., M. D., Chairman
Dr. David Byar
Irring Bush, M. D.
James H. DeWeerd, M. D.
Donald F. Gleason, M. D.
James F. Glenn, M. D.
John T. Grayhack, M. D.
F. K. Mostofy, M. D.
Wm. L. Parry, M. D.
Philip Rubin, M. D.
C. Robert Southworth, M. D.